Royal Army Medical Corps

Extract from

The Corps News

We have received some interesting particulars of a scheme for the education of sons of Regular Army officers at Public Schools, including provision for University or other fees incidental to a professional career.

The particulars state the annual fee for the school and the date of probable vacancies. A guide to careers and professions for sons and daughters, with details of expenditure necessary and method of securing entry or nomination, is also available.

The scheme embraces a Public School policy of assurance by which the heavy expenditure incurred during the few years of a Public School life can be met in advance by setting aside a much smaller sum year by year during the child's infancy. In the event of the death of the parent premiums cease and the full benefits under policy become payable at once. If anything happens to the child the policy is not affected and the eash can be utilized for any other purpose required.

The schools mentioned in the scheme are Eton, Harrow, Winchester, Rugby, Uppingham, Shrewsbury, Repton, Cheltenham, Clifton, Malvern, Charterhouse, Marlborough, Wellington, Haileybury, Epsom, Stowe, Royal Naval College, Dartmouth, and many others. Not the least useful section of the particulars is a long list of preparatory schools which are not always quite so well known to parents, but the importance of which cannot be over-estimated from the point of view of preparation for the entrance examinations.

The necessity for early nomination to the school selected is emphasized, and all officers interested in the scheme can receive details applicable to their own requirements from Major H. S. Lees-Smith, F.R.S.S., Temple Bar House, 23/28, Fleet Street, E.C.4.

The above scheme is equally applicable to other Branches of the Service, Retired Officers and Territorials, at Home or Abroad.

YOUR KIT HEADQUARTERS

APPROVED

MILITARY

OUTFITTERS

ALKIT LTD.

CAMBRIDGE CIRCUS,

LONDON, W.C.2

ENQUIRE for COMPLETE CATALOGUE M1.



SAYESCOURT HOTEL

2 & 4 INVERNESS TERRACE HYDE PARK, W.2.

'Phone: PARK 2640.

Sayescourt Hotel is situated within a minute's walk of Kensington Gardens, Central London Railway, Metropolitan Railway, and Buses to all parts of London.

Large Reception Rooms, Gas Fires in all Bedrooms :: Separate Tables.

Single Room - £3-3-0 per week

Double ,, from £6-6-0 to £8-8-0

Bed and Breakfast - - - 7/6

Per Day - - from 12/6 to 15/-

ESTABLISHED 1824

CRAIG & DAVIES

MILITARY AND CIVIL BOOTMAKERS

BOOTMAKERS BY APPOINTMENT TO THE ROYAL MILITARY ACADEMY, WOOLWICH

28A, SACKVILLE ST., W.1

and

FRANCES STREET, WOOLWICH

OUTFITS FOR ALL STATIONS

Telephones:

REGENT 1747

WOOLWICH 0014

KEEP IN TOUCH

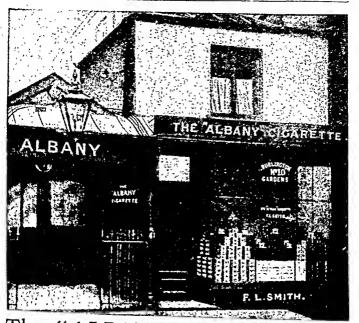
THE pages of "The People" will keep you in touch with important events of the day at home and overseas. You will find reliable and exhaustive reports on every kind of sport, and thrilling features from the pens of famous men and women.

READ

The People

EVERY SUNDAY

HUGE CASH PRIZES WEEKLY



"ALBANY" CIGARETTES

Turkish and Virginia

Have them sent to you wherever you are.

The famous

"BARBIC" Bruyere Pipes.

F. L. SMITH,

BURLINGTON GARDENS 10,

LONDON, W.I.

Be well groomed . . . not gummed!

Do not dress your hair with creams which contain gum. Brylcreem controls the hair; glosses and fixes it at the same time. Promotes growth—never powders or flakes. Prevents thinning and greyness. A Hair Dressing and Tonic all in one.

Guaranteed not to contain gum



BRYLCREEM
On Object Hair Dressing

Obtainable from all Chemists, Hairdressers and Stores in the black screw-cap bottle.

9d., 1/-, 1/6 and 2/6 THE COUNTY PERFUMERY CO. LTD.,

THE COUNTY PERFUMERY CO. LTD., BRADFORD STREET, BIRMINGHAM.

80118

THE PAPER THAT FOLLOWS THE FLAG

NEWS OF THE WORLD

—the world's most popular weekly newspaper—can be obtained abroad wherever you may be. By post, boundary rider or runner, your copy of the "News of the World" will reach you, and keep you up-to-date, anywhere between Grant Land in the Far North and Graham Land in the Extreme South—in fact, wherever the Anglo-Saxon tongue is heard :: ::

30 Bouverie St., London, E.C.4, England

"NEAR ENOUGH" IS NOT GOOD ENOUGH

when it comes to efficiency in the ARMY. Nor is it when making a Tennis Raeket. For over 50 years, in fact ever since the rules of Lawn Tennis were laid down by the M.C.C. Sub-Committee in 1875, the firm of JOHN HOLDEN has been making and supplying direct to players rackets made to customers' own requirements as regards weight, balance, dimensions of handle, and stringing. Rackets are specially strung to suit any climate, and many officers still serving will testify to the reliability of "HOLDEN" rackets after having used them for many years in all parts of the world.

Why not have the particulars of your favourite racket registered? A Telegram or Cable is all that would then be necessary to ensure you receiving at the earliest moment a racket made exactly to your own specification. We are specialists, and can guarantee satisfaction. All rackets are hand-made throughout from the finest English materials. There is no mass production. Highly skilled workmen employed are under the personal supervision of the present proprietor, P. HOLDEN, who has had 34 years' practical experience at the bench. The final process of shaping handles and adjusting the balance of every racket made to order is carried out by Mr. Holden personally.

The prices of "HOLDEN" rackets are low in comparison with other high quality makes. This is made possible by direct trading and by strict adherence to the firm's policy—no free rackets or discounts.

Every customer receives the same consideration and attention and pays the same price.

Can any other firm offer better service?

THE "SUPER-HOLDEN" LAWN TENNIS RACKET (Patent No. 336704) PRICE 63/-MADE BY **IOHN HOLDEN** 232 BAKER STREET, LONDON, N.W.I

Phone: Welbeck 8622.

Catalogue free on request.

LAWN TENNIS, SQUASH AND BADMINTON RACKETS

(See opposite page)



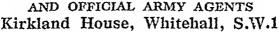
Glyn, Mills & Co.



(Established 1753) with which is incorporated

Holt & Co.

BANKERS



Managing Partners:
LORD WOLVERTON.
LAURENCE CURRIE.
LORD HILLINGDON.

GENERAL THE HON. SIR H. A. LAWRENCE, G.C.B. BRIGADIER-GENERAL SIR A. MAXWELL, K.C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O. ERIC GORE BROWNE, D.S.O. FREDERICK WILLIAM FANE.

Frederick William Fane. Martin Drummond Vesey Holt.

Drawing and Deposit Accounts, Private or Official, opened on the usual terms.

Pay issued. Allowances received.

Retired Pay, Half Pay and Pensions of every description collected and credited to customers' accounts, free of charge. Insurance of all kinds effected. Life, Accident, Fire, Burglary,

Insurance of all kinds effected. Life, Accident, Fire, Burgla Motor Car, Domestic Servants, etc. Rates on application.

Sur-Tax and Income Tax. Particulars furnished on application regarding the preparation of returns, and recovery of Tax.

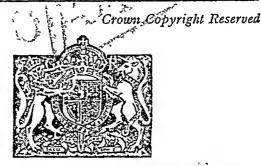
Club and other Subscriptions and Periodical Payments

club and other Subscriptions and Periodical Payments attended to,

And all other forms of Banking.

EXECUTORSHIPS AND TRUSTEESHIPS UNDERTAKEN

[Notified in Army Orders for October, 1932



INFANTRY TRAINING

26 Manuals 640

Vol. I

TRAINING

1932

LONDON

PUBLISHED BY HIS MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE
To be purchased directly from H.M. STATIONERY OFFICE at the following addresses
Adastral House, Kingsway, London, W.C.2; 120, George Street, Edinburgh e
York Street, Manchester; 1, St. Andrew's Crescent, Cardul
15, Doneg'll Square West, Belfast
or through any Bookseller

1932

Price 1s. 3d. net.

57-200-1-32

By Command of the Army Council,

Hylredy

THE WAR OFFICE, 31st October, 1932.

CONTENTS

Definitions	***	*	,	AGE 1
PART I—SYSTEM	OF TR	AININ	iG	
CHAPTE	RI			
THE PRINCIPLES	OF TR	AININ	G	
SEC.				
1. General instructions	•••	•••	•••	7
2. Principles of training	•••	•••	,	7
3. Principles of instruction				16
4. Responsibility for training	•••	•••		18
5. Infantry organization	•••	***		22
6. Maintenance of organization		•••	,	26
o. Maintenance of Organization	,,,,	•••	•••	20
CHAPTEI	R TT			
				
RECRUIT TR	AININ	G		
7. Depot organization	•••	•••	•••	29
8. System of training	•••	•••		30
9. Syllabus of training at depo	ot	•••		32
10. Standard of efficiency	•••			38
11. Allotment of time	•••	•••		39
12. Elementary collective train		•••	•••	40
13. Training after joining batts	lion	•••	•••	41
To training after Johning Dates	TITOH	•••	•••	~ 1

CHAPTER III

3	ANNUAL	TRAI	NING			
ŚÉC	0.					PAGE
	Annual training		•••	•••	•••	42
	Individual training		•••			44
	Individual training of t					45
	Individual training of t					50
	Collective training					56
	General instructions					
	PART I	מת ז	TT T			
	PARI I	1DV	يادا ١.			
	CHAP	TER I	V			
	SQUAD	DRI	LL			
20.	General instructions for	drillin	g recru	its		70
	Words of command				•••	
	Inspection			•••	•••	75
	SQUAD DRILL	WITH	OUT A	ARMS		
	Squad Drill	with I	NTERVA	ALS		
23.	Formation of squads wi	th inte	rvals	•••	•••	75
	Attention			•••		76
25.	Standing at ease	•••	•••	•••	•••	77
	Standing easy				•••	77
27,	Dressing a squad with i	nterval	ls	•••	•••	78
28.	Turning by numbers	•••		•••		78
29.	Length of pace and tim	e in ma	arching	•••		80
30.	The drum and pace stic	k	•••			81

SEC	•			3	PAGE
	Position in marching	•••	•••	•••	81
32,	Marching in quick and slow ti	me	• • •	•••	82
	Changing step	•••	•••	•••	84
34.	Marching in double time	•••	•••	•••	84
35.	The side step	•••	•••	• • •	85
36.	Turning when on the march	•••	•••	•••	86
	SQUAD DRILL IN SIN	GLE R	ANK		
37.	Formation of squads in single	rank	•••	•••	87
	Dressing in single rank	•••	•••		87
	Numbering a squad	•••	•••	•••	88
	Opening and closing a squad	•••	•••	•••	88
41.	Marching in single rank	•••	•••	•••	88
42.	Changing the pace from quick	to do	uble ti	me,	
	and vice versa	•••	•••	•••	89
43.	The diagonal march	•••	•••	•••	89
	Changing direction	•••	•••	•••	89
45.	Marching as in file	•••	•••	•••	90
		•			
	SQUAD DRILL IN TW	O KAN	vks		
46.	Formation of a squad in two:	ranks	•••	•••	92
47.	Dressing	•••	•••	• • •	92
48.	Numbering a squad	•••	•••	• • •	93
49.	Opening and closing a squad	•••	•••	•••	93
50.	Marching in line	•••	•••	•••	93
51.	Marching in file	•••	•••	•••	95
52.	Forming fours	•••	•••	•••	98
	Movements in fours	•••	•••	•••	101
	Drill with the cane or pace sti		•••	•••	103
55.	Dismissing with or without ar	ms	•••	•••	105

SQUAD DRILL WITH ARMS

	RIFLE EXERCISES			
SEC.				PAGE
	General rules	•••	•••	106
57.	Falling in with arms at the order	•••	• • •	107
58.	To stand at ease and stand easy from	the or	der	107
59.	The attention from stand at ease	•••	• • •	108
60.	The slope from the order	•••	•••	108
61.	The order from the slope	•••		109
62.	The present from the slope	•••	•••	110
63.	The slope from the present	•••	• • •	110
	The present from the order (for Rifle:	regime	ents	
	only)		•••	111
65.	The order from the present (for Rifle:	regime	ents	
	only)		•••	111
66.	Fixing bayonets from the order	•••		112
	Unfixing bayonets from the order	•••	•••	113
	Inspection of arms			115
	Instructions for inspecting arms	•••		118
	To examine arms	•••	•••	118
71.	The trail from the order	•••	•••	119
72.	The order from the trail		• • •	120
73.	The trail from the slope	•••	•••	120
	The slope from the trail	•••		120
	The shoulder from the order (for	Rifle :	and	
	English Light Infantry regiments			120
76.	The order from the shoulder (for		and	
	English Light Infantry regiments	only)		121
77.	The shoulder from the trail (for	Rifle :	and	
	English Light Infantry regiments			122
78.	The trail from the shoulder (for	Rifle .	and	
	English Light Infantry regiments			122

vii

SEC.		PAGE
79. To change arms when at the slope	•••	122
	•••	123
81. The short trail	•••	123
82. Fixing and unfixing bayonets on the march		124
	•••	124
84. The slope from the secure	•••	125
	,•••	125
86. The order from the secure	•••	126
87. The secure from the trail and vice versa	•••	126
	•••	127
89. To sling arms		128
90. The on-guard from the slope and vice versa		129
91. The on-guard from the order and vice versa		129
92. The support from the shoulder and vice ver	rsa	
(for Rifle regiments only)		130
93. The high-port from the on-guard and vice ver		
94. To ground arms and take up arms, from and		
the order		130
A		131
96. To recover from the slope		133
97. To slope from the recover		133
98. Porting and sloping arms by serjeants on t	he	
flanks of the escort to the colour		134
CHAPTER V		
*		
SALUTING		
99. General instructions		· 135
ERR RELATION	•••	136
100. Saluting without arms	•••	
101. Saluting with arms	•••	141

viii

CHAPTER VI

	PLATOON DRILL			
SEC.				PAGE
102.	Object of platoon drill	•••		144
103.	General rules	• • •		144
104.	Forming up, inspection, telling	off.	and	
	proving a platoon	•••		147
	proving a practice with	•••	•••	
	CHAPTER VII			
	COMPANY DRILL			
105	Object of company drill			148
106	Object of company drill General rules	•••	•••	148
100.	A commence in class column of plate	fo	.11:	140
107.	A company in close column of plato		_	
400	in with or without the drum	•••	•••	151
	·A company when halted changing		•••	152
	Close column movements	•••	:	153
110.	Column movements	•••	•••	157
	Line movements		•••	159
112.	Movements from column of fours	•••		160
113.	Other movements	•••		162
114.	Dismissing	*		162
			•••	10-
	. CHAPTER VIII			
	BATTALION DRILL			
115.	Object of battalion drill	•••	*	163
		•••		163
117.	Movements from and into mass	•••		165
	Close column and column movemen		•••	166
	Line movements		•••	
	Movements from columns of fours	•••	···	170
AMU,	TITO COMMITTED IT COMMITTED OF TORIES	•••	•••	170

ix

CHAPTER IX

FIELD SIGNALS											
SEC.	PAGE										
121. General remarks	172										
122. Signals											
123. Signals with the rifle	174										
124. Control by whistle blasts	174										
CHÁPTER X											
MARCH DISCIPLINE											
125. General instructions	176										
126. The battalion on the march	177										
127. Horsed and pack transport '	179										
128. Compliments on the march	182										
129. Sanitation on the march	184										
130. Distances on the march	185										
131. Positions of officers, etc ,	185										
PART III—CEREMONIAL											
CHAPTER XI											
DRILL—COMPANY AND BATTALION											
132. General rules	186										
133. The inspection or review parade ground	190										
THE COMPANY											
134. Sizing and telling off a company	192										
135. A company in line saluting	194										
136. A company marching past	194										

SEC.		F	deviews			T	AGE
-	The colours	•••	•••	•••	•••		196
	Rev	IEW (ог а Ва	TTALI	ON		
400		•					107
	Formation		. *** ~		•••	•••	197
139.	Receiving the	revie	wing offic	cers		•••	197
140.	Receiving the	Sove	reign or a	. Roya	al Person	nage	198
141.	Inspection in l	ine	••• *	•••	•••	•••	198
142.	Inspection in	close	column	•••	•••	•••	199
143.	A battalion m	archi	ng past	•••	•••	•••	200
	Marching past					•••	202
145.	Marching past	t in c	losê colu	mn o	f compa	mies	
	after the ma					•••	203
146.	Marching past	in co	dumn of	ronte		•••	204
147.	A battalion ac	lvano	ing in re	view (order	•••	205
•	•		PTER				
	DRILL—B	RIG	ADE AN	ND D	ivisio	N	
	Definitions						206
	General rules						206
150.	A brigade clo	se co	lumn wh	eeling	into lii	ne of	
	close column	ns and	1 vice ver	sa	•••	•••	208
151.	A brigade clos	se col	umn dep	loying	g into li	ne of	
	close column						208
152	. Marching in li	ine of	battalio	ns in	close col	umn	209
153	. Deployments	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	209
154	. Marching in I	ine	•••	• • •	•••		209
155	. A brigade in	line	advancin	gin	line of	close	
	columns	•••	•••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••	•••	210

	R	EVIEW C	DE A F	RICADI	7.		
SEC.		5 V 113 V C	/L 41 L	/III G212/1	-	3	PAGE
156.	Formation	•••	•••	•••	٠	•••	210
157.	Receiving the	e review	ing off	icer in	line of	close	
	columns .						210
158	Inspection of	a hriga	de in 1	ine	•••		211
150	A brigade ma	robing	nact	1110	•••	•••	
160	A brigade me	noning .	past b			f-om	212
100.	A brigade ma	arcining	past t	y com	pames :	Пош	019
	line of close A brigade n	coinmi	ıs			. •••	213
161.	A brigade n	narching	g past	in br	igade (close	
	column	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	214
162.	A brigade ad	vancing	in rev	iew ord	ler	•••	215
	J	J					
	R	EVIEW (of a I	Division	N		
163.	General rules	·		• • •			215
164.	A division m	arching	past				216
	Review of an						
1001		•••	-				218
166	A larger bo						210
100.	A larger bo	dy or	uoops	tiidii	a uiv	191011	219
	marching p	ast	•••	• • • •	•••		
167.	Royal Revie	w—Ord	er of n	iarch		***	220
168.	Parade to	celebrat	e the	birtho	lay of	HIS	
	Majesty th	e King,	when	His Ma	ijesty i:	s not	
	present	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	221
	_		•				
		CHAP	TER	$_{ m IIIX}$			
	GUARDS, O	GUARD LINING			OUR,	AND	
160	General rules	•					993
170	Relieving, po	oction o	r dien	iccine		•••	· 224
1771	Decedure of	Jacing, C	7. UISII. 3. /n	noonig a	r guard		LLA
1/1,	Procedure for						226
	out for insi	าคดรากท	กหาวท	OTHER			ZZO

xii

SEC.							P.	age
172.	Relieving	and po	osting	sentrie	s, and	marchi	ng	
	reliefs .					•••		227
173.	Sentries con Guards tu	halleng	ing	•••				229
174.	Guards tu	rning o	out at	night	•••	•••		230
175.	Guards of	Hono	ur	•••			•••	231
176.	Infantry !	lining	the st	reets a	it Roy	al proc	es-	
	sions, et	c				•••		233
		CI	HAPT	ER X	IV	•		
TRO	OPING A	ND F	RESE	TATK	TON (OF CO	T.OU	RS.
	FEU-DE-							
	FUNERA						,	
		TROC	PING	THE C	מוזח זר			
177.	General r							235
178.	General re Forming i	nto lin	e to t	he left				236
179.	Position of	of color	r. offic	ers. ba	nd. and	d drums		236
	Trooping							238
	Marching							246
	_	-		N OF				
192	General r			· · ·		···		940
102.	General					•••	••• '	240
				Feu-di	E-Joie			
183.	General r	ules -	•••		•••	•••	•••	251
		Sy	vord .	EXERC	ISES			
184.	Dismount				•••	•••	•••	254
185.	Mounted	sword	drill		•••	•••	•••	258
186.	Saluting	with th	ie swo	rd	•••	•••		260
187.	General i	nstruct	ions f	or offic	Crs	•••		263
			EIIN	ERALS		•		
188.	Rifle exe	rcises	T. O.V.	ELANTS	•••	•••		264
	17777							
TMT	EX	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	272

LIST OF PLATES

(Following page 277)

	(1	/	
PLAT					
I.	Key to plate	es.			
II.	Fig. 1.—The				
	,, 2Cha				(Sec. 44)
	" 3.—For	ming sq	ırad	•••	(Scc. 45, 4)
III.	Formation of	f fours	•••	•••	(Sec. 52)
IV.	The order	•••	•••	•••	(Sec. 57)
v.	The slope (r	ifle)	•••	•••	(Sec. 60)
VI.	The present	•••	•••	•••	(Sec. 62)
VII.	Fixing bayo	nets (at	"Two	'')	
	—Rear ra		•••	•••	(Sec. 66)
VIII.	Unfixing bay	yonets (at " Tu	o '')	(Sec. 67)
IX.	The trail	•••	•••	•••	(Sec. 71)
X.	The secure (rifle)	•••	•••	(Sec. 83)
XI.	The recover	(rifle)	•••	•••	(Sec. 96)
XII.	Saluting to	the fron	t	•••	(Sec. 100)
XIII.	The salute w	rith the	rifle at	the	
	slope	•••	•••	• • •	(Sec. 101)
XIV.	The slope (s	word)	•••	•••	(Sec. 184, 3)
XV.	The carry	•••	•••	•••	(Sec. 186)
XVI.	Position of r	ecover ((front v	iew)	(Sec. 186)
XVII.	The salute-	-2nd mo	tion (fr	ont	
	view)	•••	•••	•••	(Sec. 186)

SEC.							P	AGE
172.	Relieving	and p	osting	sentrie	s, and	marchi	ng	
	reliefs .	••	•••	•••	• • •		• • •	227
173.	Sentries c	halleng	ging	•••	•••	•••		229
174. (Guards tv	rning	out at	night	•••	•••	•••	230
175.	Guards of	Hono	ur	• • •			• • •	231
176.	Infantry							
	sions, et	c.	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	233
		C	HAPT	ER X	IV	•		
TRO	OPING A	AND I	PRESI	CATKE	MOI.	OF CO	LOU	RS,
	FEU-DE- FUNERA		SW	ORD	EXE	RCISES	, A	ND
•	• •		PING	THE C	OLOUR.			
177.	General r					•••	•••	235
178.	General r Forming	into lir	ne to t	he left	•••	•••	•••	236
179.	Position of	of color	ır, offi	cers, ba	nd, and	drums		236
180.	Trooping	the co	lour	•••	• • •	•••		238
181.	Marching	past	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	246
		Preser	NTATIO	N OF	Colour	RS		
182.	General r			•••		•••		249
		Errir	NC A	Feu-di				
193	General r			T.F.O.D.		•••		251
100.	General					•••	•••	231
	~ .			Exerc				
	Dismoun				•••	•••	•••	254
	Mounted				•••	•••	•••	258
100.	Saluting	with the	ne swo	rd	•••	•••	•••	260
107.	General i	.nstruc			crs	•••	•••	263
		_	Fur	VERALS		•		
188.	Rifle exe	rcises	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	264
IND	EX	•••		***	•••	•••	•••	272

LIST OF PLATES

(Following page 277)

PLAT	E			
I.	Key to plates.			
II.	Fig. 1.—The diagona ,, 2.—Changing di ,, 3.—Forming sq	irection		
III.	Formation of fours	•••	•••	(Sec. 52)
IV.	The order	•••	•••	(Sec. 57)
v.	The slope (rifle)	•••	•••	(Sec. 60)
VI.	The present	•••	•••	(Sec. 62)
VII.	Fixing bayonets (at —Rear rank	." Two	")	(Sec. 66)
VIII.	Unfixing bayonets (a	at " Tw	o '')	(Sec. 67)
IX.	The trail	•••	•••	(Sec. 71)
X.	The secure (rifle)	•••	•••	(Sec. 83)
XI.	The recover (rifle)	•••	•••	(Sec. 96)
XII.	Saluting to the fron	t	•••	(Sec. 100)
XIII.	The salute with the	rifle at f	the	
	slope	•••	•••	(Sec. 101)
XIV.	The slope (sword)	•••	•••	(Sec. 184, 3)
XV.	The carry	•••	•••	(Sec. 186)
XVI.	Position of recover (front vi	.ew)	(Sec. 186)
VII.	The salute—2nd mo	tion (fro	ont	(Sec. 186)

xiv

PLATE XVIII.	The salute—2nd motion (side	
	view) `	(Sec. 186)
XIX.	Rifle platoon drill formations	(Sec. 103)
XX.	Machine gun platoon drill for- mations	(Sec. 103)
XXI.	Company drill formations	(Sec. 106)
XXII.	A company in column of route	(Sec. 106)
XXIII.	A battalion in mass	(Sec. 116)
XXIV.	A battalion, etc., adopting open formation from column	•
	of route :	(Sec. 18, 6, vii)
XXV.	Section battle formations	(Sec. 18, 7, ii)
XXVI.	Ceremonial. — A battalion in	
	line	(Sec. 138)
XXVII.	Ceremonial. — A battalion in	
	close column of companies	(Sec. 142)

INFANTRY TRAINING Volume I TRAINING

DEFINITIONS

Alignment.—Any straight line on which a body of troops is formed or is to form.

· Barrage.—A curtain of fire in front of the infantry. A creeping barrage is one that moves gradually in front of the advancing infantry. A box barrage is one which is put down on the flanks and rear of any area of ground in order to isolate it.

Berm.—The distance between the edge of an excavation and the mound formed of the excavated earth in a defence work.

Blank file.—A front rank man without a rear rank man.

Blockhouse.—A small shelter made of concrete, wood, or stones, etc.

Bombardment.—A heavy concentration of artillery or mortar fire on defensive positions.

Bound.—A movement from one tactical position to another.

Breastwork.—A defence work of which the greater portion of its height is above ground level.

Camouflage.—Any artificial means employed to deceive the enemy's visual or photographic observation from the ground or from the air.

Close column.—A column with distances reduced to suit requirements. If no specific orders are given the distance between units will be five paces.

Column.—Bodies of troops on parallel and successive alignments whose front ranks are distant from the front ranks of preceding units by a number of paces equivalent to their respective frontages.

Column of route.—A column of fours with not more than four men abreast in any part of the column, including officers and supernumeraries. The normal formation for troops marching on a road.

Consolidation.—Making captured ground secure against attack by organization of the troops and by provision of protection.

Covering.—The act of a body placing itself directly in rear of another.

Covering fire.—Fire by units and arms to engage the enemy's attention and force him to seek cover in order that other units or arms may advance or retire.

Deploy, to.—To extend a formation or unit into a more open formation.

Depth.—The space occupied by a body of troops from front to rear.

Direction, battalion (company, platoon, section, or file) of.—The battalion (company, platoon, section, or file) responsible for keeping the direction in a drill movement or manœuvre.

Distance.—The space between units in column or close column. It is always measured from the heels of the rear rank of one unit to the heels of the front rank of the next.

Dress, to.—To take up the alignment correctly.

Drill.—The training of the soldier to execute certain movements as a second nature.

Enfilade fire.—Fire which sweeps the position or body of troops from a flank.

Field of fire.—The area of ground exposed to the effective fire of a given number of men or group of guns.

File.—A front rank man and his rear rank man.

Fire control.—The necessary arrangements and orders for hitting the target.

Fire direction.—The term applied to instructions given by the commander of more than one fire unit to the fire unit commanders, as to how their fire is to be applied.

Fire plan.—The arrangements made by a commander to ensure that the fire of all the weapons of which he disposes is co-ordinated and directed in accordance with his intention.

Fire step.—A recess or ledge made or left in the face of a trench so that a man standing on it is enabled to fire over the parapet.

Fire unit.—Any number of men firing by the executive command of one. The section is the normal infantry fire unit.

Flank, directing.—The flank by which units march or dress.

Flank, inner.—That nearer to the directing flank.

Flank, outer.—That opposite to the inner or directing flank.

Flam.—Two strokes on the drum beaten in very quick succession, the second stroke being louder than the first. A double flam is this repeated with a very slight pause between each flam.

. Formation, battalion (company, platoon, section, or file) of.—The battalion (company, platoon, section, or file) on which a change of formation is based.

Forward slope.—The side of a hill or mound which is towards the enemy. Hence the reverse slope is that away from the enemy.

Front.—The direction in which troops are facing or moving at any given time.

Frontage.—The extent of ground covered laterally by a body of troops.

Ground scouts.—Men employed to ascertain whether the ground in the immediate vicinity is passable and to discover the most favourable route for movement in any direction.

Incline.—The movement by which ground is gained to the front and flank simultaneously.

Interval.—The lateral space between units on the same alignment.

Interval, deploying.—The lateral space between units in close column or in column, on the same alignment, the space being equal to the frontage of a unit in line.

Liaison.—Means for ensuring co-operation and keeping touch between units or arms.

Line.—Troops formed on the same alignment.

Mass.—A battalion with its companies in line of close columns of platoons, with five paces interval between companies.

Oblique fire.—Fire which is directed diagonally, roughly half-way between front and flank.

Observation post.—A post from which a particular area can be kept under observation or from which artillery and machine-gun fire can be controlled and corrected.

Orderly.—A man detailed to carry messages.

Parados.—A bank of earth constructed to give protection against reverse fire and the back blast of high-explosive shells, etc.

Parapet.—Earth, etc., banked up in front of a trench above ground level, to afford protection from frontal fire.

Patrol.—See Scc. 19, 4.

Patrol, standing.—A small party of men under a N.C.O. posted a considerable distance in advance of other troops to watch either the enemy, a route by which he might advance, or a locality in which he might attempt to concentrate unseen.

Piquet (tactical).—A self-contained party detached for a definite period from a force for the purpose of carrying out protective duties in the case of warfare against savage or semi-civilized enemies.

Position, change of.—A movement by which a body of troops takes up a new alignment.

Rank.—A line of men, side by side.

Reconnaissance.—Examining, exploring, and searching the country in order to discover and locate the enemy or to find out the lie of the land.

Rendezvous.-A prearranged place of assembly.

Report centre.—A position to which reports for a commander are to be sent.

Reverse fire.—Fire directed against the rear of a position.

Revet.—To hold up earth at a steeper slope than its natural slope by artificial means or to strengthen the sides of an excavation by artificial means in order to prevent them falling in.

Section of a trench.—The sectional view of a trench showing breadth, depth, and slope of the sides, etc.

Single file.—A column of files.

Squad.—A small body of men formed for drill.

*Sump.—A hole dug in the ground to collect surface water with a view of allowing it to soak away.

Supernumeraries.—The N.C.Os., etc., forming the third rank.

Traverse.—A buttress of earth provided between two adjacent portions of a fire or communication trench for protection against enfilade or oblique fire and to localize the effect of shell bursts, etc.

Wheeling.—A movement by which a body of troops brings forward a flank on a fixed or moving pivot.

PART I—SYSTEM OF TRAINING

CHAPTER I

PRINCIPLES AND SYSTEM OF TRAINING

1. General instructions

- 1. The volumes of this manual deal with :
 - i. The training of infantry (Vol. I).
 - ii. The leading and employment of infantry in war (Vol. II).

The instructions which they contain and the principles which they lay down are based on the doctrine for the organization, training, and leadership of the army, as set forth in Field Service Regulations.

- 2. The aim of training must be to teach the officers and N.C.Os. to apply these principles, and so to imbue each leader with them that, in the heat of action, he will automatically apply them in the right way.
- 3. The enunciation, by officers responsible for the training of infantry, of principles other than those contained in this manual, and the practice of methods not based on those principles, are forbidden.

2. Principles of training

OBJECT OF TRAINING

1. The sole object of military training is to prepare our forces for war, success in battle being held constantly in view as the ultimate aim.

- 2. To attain this object it is necessary:-
 - To inculcate the power of command in the leaders.
 - ii. To foster the individual soldier's good fighting qualities, which depend on discipline, esprit de corps, physical fitness, intelligence, mobility, and confidence in his leader and in his weapons. These are the essentials which build up a soldier, and they can be developed by the methods of training described in this manual.

iii. To ensure the successful co-operation of all arms in battle.

LEADERSHIP

- 3. Wars have proved that victory can be won only as the result of skilled leadership and bold offensive action, while experience has shown that the increased decentralization of command necessitated by the power of modern weapons calls for increased initiative and increased tactical knowledge on the part of all ranks.
- 4. Leadership depends on simple and straightforward human qualities. A leader, above all, must have the confidence of his men. He will gain their confidence by commanding their respect—respect for his determination and his ready acceptance of responsibility; for the clearness and simplicity of his orders and the firm way in which he insists that they shall be carried out; for his thorough knowledge of his profession; for his sense of justice; for his common sense; for his keenness, energy, and habit of forethought; for his sense of humour; for his indifference to personal danger and the

readiness with which he shares his men's hardships; for his persistent good humour in face of difficulties; and for the obvious pride he takes in his command.

- 5. The leader who wins his men's confidence has attained much; he has an instrument at hand capable of high achievement, and the spirit with which he is able to imbue it will carry it to success through the hardest fighting. Whatever demands he may make on it will be cheerfully and willingly met. Wherever he goes, his men will follow.
- 6. A leader must also have confidence in himself. The ability to command, developed by actual practice in the command of men, includes readiness of judgment, which can be acquired only as the result of sound military knowledge built up by study and practice until it has become an instinct. It includes also initiative (i.e. the ability to determine when independent action is required), and the necessary self-confidence to take such action promptly and to assume responsibility for it, as well as the power of decentralization (i.e. the ability to execute an order through subordinate commanders without interference with their personal responsibility). Lastly, it includes tact and knowledge of human nature so that the best may be got out of the men.
 - 7. The virtue most to be cultivated in training, as in war, is energy. To do nothing is to do something definitely wrong. Energy in training, energy in fighting, pride in his work, combined with strict discipline, and pride in, and sympathy for, his men are all qualities necessary for a successful commander.

MORAL QUALITIES

8. The pages of this manual are mostly devoted to, teaching the leader to lead and the soldier to fight. It must, however, be remembered that the development of morale, which includes fighting spirit and discipline, is the first object to be attained in the training of an army. Throughout all training, therefore, while skill is being acquired, the necessity for fostering morale must always be borne in mind, so that the two qualities may grow together.

9. The moral qualities to be developed by a soldier include self-control, self-respect, patriotism, loyalty, pride of race, and a high sense of honour. The growth of these moral qualities will be fostered chiefly by environment, and it is the duty of all ranks to assist in this object by their conversation and example.

The value of the co-operation of the Army Chaplains' department in this connection should not be lost sight of.

FIGHTING SPIRIT

10. The final test of a unit is its fighting spirit. which is its resolution to close with the enemy, based on confidence in its superiority. A battle is won only when the enemy's forces are destroyed; when his troops are killed or captured. The task of every unit in battle is to kill or capture the enemy confronting it.

The fighting spirit of the unit is founded on the personality of its commander, on his resolute belief in himself, on discipline, and on the confidence which the men show in their leaders and their weapons. The skill-at-arms derived from constant practice, and the

physical fitness derived from physical training and games, are essential for efficiency and contribute directly to this fighting spirit.

DISCIPLINE

11. Discipline, by means of which the morale of a force can alone be maintained, is the bedrock of all

training.

It is the ingrained habit of cheerful and unhesitating obedience which controls and directs the fighting spirit. It includes, individually, self-respect and its outward marks, such as cleanliness and a smart bearing; collectively, "team work" under the "captain of the team."

- 12. The first and quickest method of teaching discipline is close order drill. The soldier begins his drill by being taught the "position of attention," which in itself is the key to the purpose for which drill was invented. It secures the whole attention of the man to his commander by requiring:
 - i. Absolute silence.
 - ii. The body controlled and motionless.
 - iii. Eager expectation of the word of command and instant readiness to obey it.

While in the position of attention the unit places itself at the unlimited disposal of its commander. In drill movements it adds to this the instant, unhesitating, and exact obedience of orders.

Thus close order drill compels the habit of obedience, and stimulates, by combined and orderly movement, the man's pride in himself and in his unit. It will not have

these results unless smartly carried out. Slovenly drill is worse than useless. It is the quality of the drill and not the length of time spent on it which is important. During the parade commanders must insist on immediate and exact obedience by the whole unit to every order given.

It thus becomes instinctive and so automatic for the leader to impress his will upon his subordinates, and for them to carry out his intentions exactly, immediately,

and without demur.

ESPRIT DE CORPS

- 13. Esprit de corps is the pride in his unit which makes a man unwilling to bring discredit on it and ready at need to sacrifice himself for its honour.
- 14. Strict and unvarying maintenance of infantry organization in all circumstances is the surest guarantee of esprit de corps. On and off parade the man should work and play as a member of his section, platoon, or company, and not as an individual. Competitions in work and games between units and sub-units stimulate pride in the unit and loyalty to it. The man will learn to "play for the side" and not for himself, and will realize that his unit is of more importance than the individuals who compose it. Within the section and platoon the men must know their commanders and each other. The aim of good organization is to reduce the disturbing effects of change, and consequently interference with organization is minimized.

Good march discipline reflects esprit de corps. A battalion is judged—and judges itself—by conduct on

the march and by the bearing and turn-out of detached parties and individuals. Officers and men in a good marching battalion have pride in themselves. In a unit moving well, the weaker men are unconsciously helped by the stronger men as the swing of the whole unit carries them forward. A straggler should be made to feel that he has disgraced himself and his regiment.

Esprit de corps guarantees good work from a working party if it is made to realize that working is a form of fighting and equally a test of its efficiency; it ensures that the individual man, whether present with or away from his battalion, will bear himself in accordance with

its standards.

Pride of regiment will be fostered by short and interesting lectures on the regiment's record in the past generally, and in the Great War in particular, including deeds of special gallantry performed by individual officers and men.

PHYSICAL FITNESS

15. Fighting spirit, discipline, esprit de corps, and mobility are bound up with physical fitness.

The efficient fighting man requires a sound mind in a fit body. For this the physical exercise of drill and physical training are most valuable for developing quickness of mind and eye, but are not by themselves sufficient. Fitness of body and contentment of mind come more readily in the free atmosphere of games. The platoon commander should organize in the afternoons football, cricket, boxing, and cross-country running, especially in competition with other platoons, and take part in them himself. The men will respond wholeheartedly, and will carry the spirit of their games into

their work. A platoon which plays football, runs, and boxes, will be qualified to meet and overcome the stress and strain of battle and of long marches.

MENTAL TRAINING

16. The conditions of modern warfare necessitate considerable decentralization of responsibility to junior leaders and individuals. The soldier must therefore be intelligent, adaptable, and capable of acting on his own These qualities are developed by educational training, which though it includes instruction and study not purely military in character, is an integral part of military training.

The objects of educational training are set forth in Educational Training 1931, Sec. 2, and in 'Columbia's Training 1732 (Indian Corresp) Sec. 2"

17. Since the soldier has eventually to return to civil

life he should be given every encouragement to learn some trade, and such facilities as exist for instruction of

this kind should be carefully developed.

It should be impressed on soldiers that their prospects of civil employment after leaving the army depend on their conduct in the army, that preference is given to such as have exemplary or very good characters, and that sobriety is a very important qualification for employment.

SKILL AT ARMS

18. i. All operations of war lead to the application of weapons and all plans must fail if the weapons are not effectively employed. Without men skilled in their use weapons alone are valueless. It is therefore essential that a man should have a thorough knowledge of his weapons and their use, and that he should appreciate the necessity for their proper care and maintenance, so that he may have confidence in them and reliance on them to kill the enemy.

ii. He must be so practised that in an emergency he will instinctively use his weapons to the best advantage in accordance with the nature of the ground and other circumstances. Unless this has become second nature, his efficiency will not be maintained in the excitement of battle.

Skill at arms implies that state of complete confidence and control which the individual has obtained in all the weapons with which he is armed, thereby giving him absolute superiority over any possible opponent under any conditions or circumstances.

iii. The soldier must be taught to realize from the outset of his training that responsibility for such practice must largely rest with himself, and that throughout all stages of his training various tests and standards of skill are provided which afford a means whereby he can demonstrate his ability.

iv. Those responsible for his training must inspire in him the will to practise and afford to him opportunities for such practice so that confidence can be obtained. In this respect it should be the ambition of every subordinate leader by personal example and demonstration to be the "master" of his command in skill at arms.

MOBILITY

19. The aim of infantry should be to close with the enemy or drive him from his positions, and for this purpose mobility is essential. The ability to move

rapidly in face of the enemy depends largely on the will and physical fitness of the individual soldier, the application of fire, and the use of ground.

The common-sense use of ground is of extreme importance. The soldier must be taught to appreciate how ground will assist him in movement and in the use of his weapons, and how he may take advantage of it to defeat his enemy (see also Sec. 19, 2).

Co-operation

20. An army can exert its full power only when all its parts act in close co-operation. Throughout their training, therefore, all ranks of infantry must be taught to realize the close relationship between their own role and that of the other arms in battle. They must understand the methods employed by cavalry, artillery, engineers, tanks, and aircraft to support them; they must appreciate the importance of close liaison and intimate mutual co-operation during the preliminary arrangements for a battle and throughout every stage of the action.

3. Principles of instruction.

- 1. The following notes on teaching are primarily for the guidance of platoon commanders, but the principles on which they are based should be applied by commanders of all ranks at all stages of training.
 - 2. A good trainer requires :-
 - (a) Enthusiasm.
 - (b) Sympathy with and interest in his men, and an understanding of their outlook.

- (c) A clear idea beforehand of the lessons to be taught and how he proposes to teach them.
- (d) Knowledge of his subject.
- (e) Common sense.
- (\dot{f}) The ability to encourage by praise where praise is due, and to avoid sarcasm.

There must be a clear object in the trainer's mind for every lesson. To train without system and foresight is waste of time.

- 3. No method of training will be effective unless it possesses two essentials:
 - i. Simplicity.
 - ii. Interest.

The instructor must set out to teach one lesson only at a time. Unessential details obscure the lesson and confuse the mind of the learner.

The business of the trainer is to present to the man his daily lessons in an interesting and varied shape. They may take the form of a competition or game, provided it has the novelty which attracts interest and produces the result at which he aims.

- 4. Novelty will not be produced without effort and forethought. Whenever possible, the platoon commander will get his section commanders together and explain his intention, plans, and arrangements.
- 5. Training should not be delayed because of the backwardness of one or two men. Such men will be given special instruction to bring them up to standard.
- 6. The platoon commander must expect and look for mistakes. It is by pointing out and correcting mistakes

that training progresses. Provided encouragement follows correction, criticism of faults due to slackness or neglect should be unsparing, but criticism of shortcomings after an honest attempt must be such as will produce a further and better effort. Good work should always be acknowledged. Subordinates should also be practised in training on these lines.

7. The two main channels of instruction are by the eye and the ear. The usual tendency is to train too much by the ear and not enough by the eye. The brain retains more readily and firmly what it sees than what it hears. A trainer must train, therefore, more by the eye than by the ear. The following sequence of training will be adopted when practicable:—

Explanation.—Instruction by the ear.

Demonstration.—Instruction by the eye.

Execution.—Testing the results of the instruction and correcting mistakes.

Repetition.—Practice to gain improvement.

4. Responsibility for training

- 1. All commanders, from section commanders upwards, are responsible for the training and efficiency of their commands both in peace and war.
- 2. Senior officers, while delegating authority for the training of subordinate units, are themselves responsible that the training is carried out in accordance with the instructions contained in this manual. They will never forgo their duties of guidance and control, and will exercise a continuous supervision over the work of their subordinate com-

manders. The lower the unit being supervised, or the less experienced its leaders, the closer must be the supervision. In carrying out this duty, officers will act as directors of instruction rather than as instructors. The development of initiative by all subordinate commanders is of vital importance. Anything likely to tend to its suppression must be avoided.

In units larger than a platoon an officer can seldom combine the two roles of commander and instructor at

the same time.

THE BATTALION COMMANDER

3. The battalion commander is responsible for the training of his battalion as a whole. The most important duty is the training of his officers, as it is through them that a battalion commander is able to make his influence felt. It is on their knowledge and ability to impart it that the efficiency of a battalion almost entirely depends.

The battalion commander should encourage a spirit of self-confidence and resolution in his subordinates, and should foster their capacity for quick thinking, for readiness of judgment, and for making prompt decisions. He should make them understand that while errors caused by excess of zeal may often be pardoned, those caused by inaction and reluctance to assume responsibility are unpardonable faults in any commander, however junior.

One of the chief responsibilities of a battalion commander is to ensure that his subordinate commanders are trained in the art of teaching. The ability to teach is as important an attribute of a company, platoon, or section commander, as the ability to learn. Personal knowledge is of little value unless the officer is able to

impart his knowledge to his subordinates.

The battalion commander will ensure that the numbers and efficiency of the officers, warrant officers, N.C.Os. and men required for special duties are maintained in accordance with the regulations.

THE COMPANY COMMANDER

4. The company is the principal training unit in the battalion.

The company commander will arrange for the continuous training of his company throughout the year. He is responsible not only that his platoon and section commanders and specialists are well trained, but also that there is a capable understudy to take the place of each leader whenever the necessity may arise.

THE PLATOON COMMANDER

- 5. As the efficiency of the company depends largely on the efficiency of the platoons which compose it, the responsibilities of a platoon commander are considerable. A good platoon is one which is well-trained and well-led, and in which the various sections use their tactical skill and weapons to the best advantage.
- 6. The platoon commander cannot in action command every individual man in his platoon; he must not attempt to do so when training it. He commands his platoon through his section commanders. His chief care must therefore be to instruct his section commanders and to give them ample opportunities to command and train their sections.

- 7. Since the training of the section rests with its commander, the selection of junior N.C.Os. requires care. The platoon commander must ensure that his best men are noted for promotion. Promising privates will be given opportunities of exercising command.
- 8. The platoon commander is the guardian of his platoon. In addition to his responsibility for its training it is his duty and privilege to look after its interests at all times. He will place his own comfort or convenience after that of his men. On arrival in billets, etc., he will see personally that the men are fed and properly settled for the night before he attends to his own comfort. The responsibility rests with him for seeing that the arrangements for the supply of rations and water are working efficiently, that the sick are seen by the medical officer, and that he discerns the man who will not report sick when he should. He should know all his men, and the history and personality of each. He should frequently talk to them on general topics and keep them informed of the progress of events. When a man becomes a casualty, the platoon commander should write to his next-of-kin and see also that his personal property is correctly disposed of.

property is correctly disposed of.

These are a few of the ways in which the platoon commander can interest himself in his men's welfare and earn a loyalty which the danger and discomfort

of war will be powerless to shake.

THE SECTION COMMANDER

9. The most definite responsibility which a platoon commander can and should thrust upon his section commanders is the duty of converting every private in

their sections into an expert in the use of ground and a skilled man-at-arms. This is the real test of a section commander's capacity. To enable him to succeed he must be given reasonable opportunities of exercising his men under arms. Section commanders must remember that smartness in arms drill is a necessary step in training to arms.

10. The authority possessed by the junior N.C.Os. over the men depends on the help they receive from the platoon commander. Their position is not an easy one. They live with the men they have to command and are themselves often of recent promotion. The support of the platoon commander will assist them to gain and keep the respect of the men and to appreciate the obligation of their rank. No charge against a N.C.O. will be investigated nor fault found with him in the presence of the men. The men will not address him familiarly but by his rank. It is important for the standing of the N.C.Os. in the platoon that any charge brought by a man against a N.C.O. should be fully examined.

5. Infantry organization

1. The number of men which can be directly controlled in battle by one commander is strictly limited. The basis of infantry organization is accordingly the section which is the largest group of men which can be personally controlled by its leader throughout the battle. Sections are grouped into platoons, platoons into companies, companies into battalions, and battalions into infantry brigades. This system, known as the "chain of command," ensures orderly manœuvre

by any number of units in accordance with a single plan, and enables the section commander to assist in giving practical effect to the plans and instructions of the commander-in-chief.

2. The detailed organization of an infantry battalion

in war is given below.

BATTALION

3. A battalion consists of :-

Headquarter wing. Three rifle companies. Machine gun company.

The four companies of a battalion are designated by serial letters, the machine gun company being distinguished by the symbol "MG."

HEADQUARTER WING

4. The headquarter wing of a battalion consists of:—

No. 1 Group.—Battalion headquarters, signallers, intelligence section, clerks, stretcher bearers, batmen, and orderlies.

No. 2 Group.—The anti-tank platoon with 4 anti-

tank guns.

No. 3 Group.—The personnel employed primarily in administrative duties, but available for fighting in emergency.

2 anti-aircraft light automatics and regi-

mental transport.

(Peace establishments contain a No. 4 Group consisting of drummers or buglers and bandsmen. These will be

trained during peace as stretcher bearers, or in some war appointment in the headquarter wing, such as intelligence section, anti-aircraft detachments, transport drivers, etc.)

RIFLE COMPANY

5. i. A rifle company consists of:-

Company headquarters.

Four rifle platoons.

It is commanded by a major or captain, with a captain or subaltern as second in command.

ii. A rifle platoon consists of:-

Headquarters.

Two rifle sections.

Two light automatic sections.

It is commanded by a subaltern, with a serjeant (or corporal) as second in command

(platoon serjeant).

The rifle platoon is the smallest infantry unit which can be divided into interdependent bodies, each capable of fire or manœuvre. It is thus the unit on which all infantry tactics are based.

Platoons are numbered serially from 1 to 16 in the battalion. In order to distinguish machine gun platoons, the symbol "(M.G.)" will be inserted between the number allotted to the machine gun platoon and the word platoon.

iii. The section is the fire unit of the infantry. Its members must regard themselves as a team

and stick to one another and to their leader

in peace as in war.

Sections are numbered serially from 1 to 16 in a company. The odd numbers are rifle sections; the even numbers, light automatic sections.

MACHINE GUN COMPANY

6. i. A machine gun company consists of:—

Company headquarters.

Four machine gun platoons.

It is commanded by a major or captain with a captain as second in command.

ii. A machine gun platoon consists of :-

Headquarters.

Two machine gun sections (each of two guns).

It is commanded by a subaltern with a senior serjeant as second-in-command (platoon

serjeant).

The machine gun platoon is the smallest machine gun tactical unit and is the normal fire unit for indirect fire, but the section can be so employed if acting independently. For instructions regarding the numbering of machine gun platoons see para. 5, ii, above.

iii. A machine gun section consists of :-

Headquarters.

Two sub-sections (each of one gun).

It is commanded by a serjeant or corporal with a corporal as second-in-command.

The machine gun section is the fire unit for

trained during peace as stretcher bearers, or in some war appointment in the headquarter wing, such as intelligence section, anti-aircraft detachments, transport drivers, etc.)

RIFLE COMPANY

5. i. A rifle company consists of:—

Company headquarters.

Four rifle platoons.

It is commanded by a major or captain, with a captain or subaltern as second in command.

ii. A rifle platoon consists of:-

Headquarters.

Two rifle sections.

Two light automatic sections.

It is commanded by a subaltern, with a serjeant (or corporal) as second in command

(platoon serjeant).

The rifle platoon is the smallest infantry unit which can be divided into interdependent bodies, each capable of fire or manœuvre. It is thus the unit on which all infantry tactics are based.

Platoons are numbered serially from I to 16 in the battalion. In order to distinguish machine gun platoons, the symbol "(M.G.)" will be inserted between the number allotted to the machine gun platoon and the word platoon.

iii. The section is the fire unit of the infantry. Its members must regard themselves as a team

and stick to one another and to their leader

in peace as in war.

Sections are numbered serially from 1 to 16 in a company. The odd numbers are rifle sections; the even numbers, light automatic sections.

Machine Gun Company

6. i. A machine gun company consists of :-

Company headquarters.

Four machine gun platoons.

It is commanded by a major or captain with a captain as second in command.

ii. A machine gun platoon consists of:-

Headquarters.

Two machine gun sections (each of two guns).

It is commanded by a subaltern with a senior serjeant as second-in-command (platoon

serjeant).

The machine gun platoon is the smallest machine gun tactical unit and is the normal fire unit for indirect fire, but the section can be so employed if acting independently. For instructions regarding the numbering of machine gun platoons see para. 5, ii, above.

iii. A machine gun section consists of :--

Headquarters.

Two sub-sections (each of one gun).

It is commanded by a serjeant or corporal with a corporal as second-in-command.

The machine gun section is the fire unit for

direct fire. Machine gun sections are numbered 1 to 8 throughout the company.

iv. A sub-section consists of the gun numbers detailed for the service of the gun.

Sub-sections are numbered 1 to 4 in each

platoon.

6. Maintenance of organization

- 1. The above organization is fixed and definite, and, except as laid down in para. 2, below, must never be varied. Only when a force is uniformly organized can every part of it be relied on by its commander to carry out the same orders in the same way, and to suffer casualties with the least injury to its efficiency. To maintain the organization, in or out of battle, no matter what the difficulty, is therefore one of the first duties of every commander.
 - 2. The following rules will be strictly enforced:
 - i. So long as one member of a section remains effective it will retain its identity. Only when a rifle company section has a strength of less than three may it be attached temporarily to another section of its platoon. It will resume its independent existence as soon as it regains a strength of three, i.e. the strength necessary to enable it to act independently as a rifle or light automatic "fire-unit."
 - The posting of N.C.Os. and men from one section to another except for the purpose of promotion, will be avoided.

- iii. Endeavours must be made during training periods to retain the full number of sections in being in order that the full complement of section commanders may be trained in each company. The training of the section commander is more important than the training of the private soldier.
- iv. Section commanders must learn to work with varying numbers of men in their sections. It is, however, essential that they should learn to command men, and during training they should be given opportunities of com-manding sections at full strength. In the case of weak units the temporary amalgama-tion of sections may be necessary for this purpose.

v. If a rifle platoon falls below an effective strength of a commander and two sections, it will be attached temporarily to another platoon in the same company, but its identity will be retained and it will resume its separate existence as soon as it regains the necessary

strength.

vi. Platoon commanders are not to be moved from one platoon to another unless the posting is intended to be permanent, nor is an officer to be brought in temporarily from another platoon to fill the place of an absent platoon commander. Thus a serjeant or corporal will often act as platoon commander.

vii. An understudy will be nominated and trained

for every platoon and section commander.

viii. Working parties, guards, and other duties will be found by complete units or sub-units under their own commanders. Approximate numbers should be asked for when possible and the commanding officer should decide how these are to be found in accordance with the instructions set forth above.

Duty rosters will be kept by complete units and sub-units, not on an individual basis.

ix. During operations, in which heavy casualties are considered possible, to assist in reforming a battalion after a battle, a nucleus—minimum 50 other ranks with a proportion of officers—will, when ordered by ligher authority, be left out of the fight. These men must be selected with great care according to their qualifications as instructors, etc., for the work of reconstruction. They will not be available as reinforcements during the battle.

CHAPTER II

RECRUIT TRAINING

7. Depot organization

- 1. The training of the infantry soldier is divided into:
 - i. Recruit training.
 - ii. Annual training.
- 2. This chapter deals with the training of regular recruits. As far as the difference in their conditions of service admits, training of recruits for infantry of the Militia, Supplementary Reserve, and Territorial Army, etc., will be carried out on similar lines.
- 3. For the training of regular recruits, the regimental depot is organized as follows:
 - i. A depot headquarters.
 - ii. An administrative company.
 - iii. A recruit training company.
 - iv. A training cadre.

The administrative company contains certain specialist instructors and all personnel not immediately connected with the training of recruits.

The recruit training company will carry out the

individual training of recruits.

The training cadre has three duties :-

(a) To teach recruits section and platoon organization, platoon drill, and battle formations.

(b) To train N.C.Os. in the instruction of recruits, and to ensure that these instructors are kept up to date in the latest and most efficient methods of training.

(c) To illustrate simple tactical exercises to N.C.Os. under training, and to Territorial Army and

Officers Training Corps units.

4. Squad instructors will be most carefully selected. They must be intelligent, energetic, smart in their bearing, and thoroughly well trained in the art of instruction. It is important that they should be both patient and sympathetic as well as strict disciplinarians. Whenever possible N.C.Os. selected for the training staff at a depot should have previously qualified at the Small Arms School, Hythe Wing.

8. System of training

1. Recruits will be formed into squads for instructional

purposes.

The normal number of recruits in a squad will be 30, and training will commence on the first Monday after

the squad is complete.

Each squad should be given a distinctive name and occupy, where possible, a separate barrack room so long as this does not lead to overcrowding; the "squad" spirit will thus be encouraged both in training and recreation.

2. The same squad staff should remain with the squad throughout the period of training and carry out the whole of the instruction, except elementary collective training, which will normally be carried out by the

training cadre, and physical and educational training, which will be taught only by fully-qualified instructors.

- 3. The daily work should be arranged with as much variety as possible. Every endeavour must be made to avoid monotony, with its consequent loss of interest.
- 4. The normal course of recruit training will be 18 weeks, at the end of which period the recruit will take his place in a platoon of a battalion serving at home.
- 5. When a squad has experienced an exceptional amount of inclement weather or sickness, permission may be given by higher authority for the squad to be allotted the necessary extra time at the depot. But the principle that a squad should reach the required standard at the depot after a full 18 weeks' training will not be departed from, except that in cases in which recruits have not attained to the required physical standard, there is no objection to their retention for a short additional period.
- 6. Before a squad is posted to the battalion, the depot commander will determine whether the individuals in it have attained the necessary standard of efficiency. A medical officer will also examine the squad as to the physical fitness of its members for the duties of trained soldiers.
- 7. As a general rule the training of regular recruits should be begun and completed at the regimental depot.
- If, owing to insufficient accommodation at the depot, recruits have to be sent to their battalions before completing the course of training, a detailed statement

on A.F. B 2091, showing where they have arrived in the syllabus, should accompany them, and their instruction should be carried on from that point when they join their battalion. On joining their battalion, such recruits will, for the purposes of administration, be posted to companies as supernumerary to the establishment of platoons, but will not be taken for drill, training, or manœuvres with their companies until dismissed recruit training.

8. Equipment will be issued when the squad commences training, but, with the exception of waistbelt, braces, and cartridge carriers, which will be used for all weapon training parades, it will not be worn on parade during the early part of training. Instructors will wear waistbelts on all parades, with braces and cartridge carriers on weapon training parades.

Dummy cartridges will always be used by both

instructors and recruits on all weapon training parades. These dummy cartridges will be inspected before every parade to ensure that no ball ammunition is present.

Rifles will be issued when the depot commander

directs, but not earlier than the second week.

9. Syllabus of training at depot

1. The course of recruit training is divided up into two parts:---

"A"—Individual training.
"B"—Elementary collective training.

For individual training 16 weeks in the training company are allowed, at the end of which time the recruit should have completed all individual and physical

training, and fired table "A," Parts I, II, III, and IV, and, if possible, have obtained his third-class certificate of education, if this can be done without cramming.

The above period will be followed by one week's elementary collective training in the training cadre,

when the squad will be organized as a platoon.

Thus 17 weeks are allotted, with one spare week to allow for bad weather and to deal with casuals, in making up the total of 18 weeks' training.

- 2. The syllabus of individual training will include instruction under the following headings:
 - i. Development of moral qualities.
 - ii. Drill-saluting, guards, and sentries.
 - iii. Physical training.
 - iv. Educational training.
 - v. Weapon training.
 - vi. March discipline.
 - vii. Anti-gas training.
 - viii. Instruction in barrack and camp duties.

Details with regard to this syllabus are given below.

3. It must be constantly borne in mind by instructors and impressed on recruits that every item in the syllabus of recruit training, has a direct bearing on training for war.

DEVELOPMENT OF MORAL QUALITIES (See also Sec. 2, 8, et seq.)

4. The development of the moral qualities which combine to form a soldierly spirit (see Sec. 2, 8) must be borne in mind throughout the period of recruit training. They will be fostered chiefly by the influence of the permanent staff at the depot.

Lectures will be given on esprit de corps and regimental history, etc.

The meaning of orders, the importance of a clean and smart turn-out, the regulations dealing with discipline, the names of their officers, how to recognize the various ranks, details of pay and promotion and other similar matters immediately affecting the soldier should be made the subject of short and interesting lectures and talks during training.

Drill—Guards and Sentries (See also Sec. 2, 11, et seq.)

5. Recruits will be instructed in the duties of guards and sentries in accordance with Secs. 169 to 174.

Physical Training (See also Sec. 2, 15)

- 6. i. The object of physical training exercises is to develop the recruit's strength, mental and physical agility, and capacity for work. The recruit on joining is not in a fit state to undertake his work as a soldier without preparation, and purely military exercises are not sufficient to give him the necessary physical fitness. He will, consequently, be exercised in a special course of physical training conducted on the principles indicated in the Manual of Physical Training.
- ii. It must be remembered that the youth of 18 is no longer so plastic as the boy. His physique will be injured rather than improved by too rapid and vigorous attempts to alter the shape and carriage of his body. The principle of progress from easy exercises of short

duration to longer and more difficult exercises must always be insisted on. It must also be remembered that the performance of the various exercises is only a means to an end, and that the training is not merely for the sake of the exercises themselves, but for their ulti-mate effects. The value of active games and sports as adjuncts to physical training cannot be over-estimated.

adjuncts to physical training cannot be over-estimated.

iii. Instruction in physical training will be given only by fully qualified instructors.

iv. Ninety-five physical training attendances will be performed by the recruit whilst at the depot and, on completion, squads will be inspected by a command physical training officer or garrison supervising officer with a view to being passed out. Attendances performed while recruits are "forming squad," and between the end of the 15th week and joining the home battalion, will count towards the number of attendances laid down.

v. In order to ensure that these compulsory attendances are carried out without fail during the normal period of recruit training, the daily physical training attendance is to be given priority over all other forms of training. The period allotted for recruit training at the depot allows ample margin for the completion of 95 attendances, and that failure to complete will only be justified in the event of long periods of illness or absence. of illness or absence.

vi. In the event of a recruit failing to complete the prescribed number of attendances, for the reasons given above, prior to joining his battalion, he will complete them forthwith on joining his unit, and finally be inspected and passed out by a command physical training officer or garrison supervising officer.

EDUCATIONAL TRAINING

(See also Sec. 2, 16)

7. All recruits should normally pass the examination for the army third class certificate of education before

they leave the depot.

On arrival at the depot they will be graded, and the members of each squad will be divided into sections according to their mental attainments, so that proper provision may be made for their progressive educational training.

All recruits will be prepared for the examinations for which their attainments fit them. As soon as a group of candidates is ready to sit for the third class certificate,

an examination will be held.

Those candidates who pass will continue their studies with a view to sitting for the second class certificate of education. Those who fail should revise the work with the candidates preparing for the following examination.

All recruits should receive educational training for one hour a day. During the period in which squads are forming it may be possible to increase this time. Extra instruction should be provided for the very backward men.

Instruction need not be given solely in the classrooms. Advantage should be taken of any local facilities for visiting manufactories and places of interest. The time occupied in such excursions will be taken from that allotted to educational training.

These visits will develop the recruit's mental powers, and the instructors can use the knowledge gained by the men in their lessons on English and Companition

men in their lessons on English and Composition.

A statement of each man's educational attainments, with a note as to his state of preparedness for the next higher examination, will be sent with his documents when he leaves the depot to join his unit.

WEAPON TRAINING

(See also Sec. 2, 18)

- 8. The instruction will include the following: i. Rifle.
 - (a) General description of the rifle and ammunition used.

(b) Instruction in the care of arms.

(c) Elementary instruction in the theory of rifle fire.

(d) Aiming and firing.(e) Table "A" up to and including Part III.(f) Visual training and judging distance.

ii. Light automatic.

(a) The instruction necessary for passing the first four tests of elementary training.

(b) Firing Table "A," Part IV.

iii. Bayonet training.

MARCHING AND MARCH DISCIPLINE

(See Chapter X and Sec. 2, 19)

9. Training in marching will be begun during recruit training and must be carried out with care, otherwise training will result in a reduction in physical strength.

Recruits should be taken out for short marches during their early training and practised in falling out and

falling in quickly.

ANTI-GAS TRAINING

10. During the limited time available for anti-gas training the recruit should be taught how the respirator works, how it is looked after, and how it is put on and taken off.

First fitting of the respirator by hand and eye must be carried out as early as possible and practice in wearing the respirator will be combined with other forms of training. Anti-gas training will be completed after a recruit joins his battalion.

INSTRUCTION IN BARRACK AND CAMP DUTIES

11. The instruction under this heading will include the laying down of kits, cleanliness, care of feet, smartness, orders, and such regulations which immediately affect the soldier.

Recruits must be given practical instruction in the fitting, cleaning, and care of their clothing, equipment, and boots as soon as these are issued.

10. Standard of efficiency

The necessary standard of efficiency to be obtained before a regular recruit joins his battalion:—

- i. Be able to turn out correctly in every "order of dress" and be fit to take his place in the ranks of the platoon in close order drill.
- ii. Have a thorough knowledge of barrack room duties and interior economy generally.
- iii. Be capable of performing the duties of a sentry on guard.

iv. Be able to carry out an ordinary route march in marching order. •

v. Have completed 95 recruit physical training

attendances.

vi. Have fired Table "A," Parts I, II, III, and IV, and be so far instructed in weapon and visual training that with further practice on joining his unit he may carry out Parts V, VI, and VII of Table "A."

vii. Have had his respirator fitted visually and been instructed in its adjustment, wearing and

maintenance.

viii. Be well grounded in bayonet training.

ix. Understand section and platoon organization, the movement of platoon drill and battle formations.

11. Allotment of time

- 1. Recruit training should be so arranged as to begin with about 20 hours' work a week, gradually increasing to about 28 hours' work a week.
- 2. The following is the number of hours which it is suggested should be spent on each subject during the individual training period. The figures are given as a guide only and may be varied as circumstances demand:—

a .					
Care of arms	***		•••	• • •	6
Aiming instruction	***	•••	•••	•••	10
Firing instruction	•••	•••	•••		12
Fire discipline	•••		•••	•••	4
Miniature range	•••	•••	•••		10
30 yards or "open" r	ange	- • •	•••	•••	12

Theory of small-a	rm fir	e	•••		•••	2	
Visual training		*	•••	•••	•••	4	
Judging distance		•••	•••	•••	•••	4	
Bayonet training		•••	•••	•••	•••	8 12	
Light automatic, including Table "A," Part IV							
Drill	•••	• • •	•••	•••	•••	104	
Guards and sentr	ies	•••		•••	•••	9	
Physical training	•••	•••	•••	•••		95	
Educational train	ing	•••		•••		75	
Lectures	•••	•••	•••	•••		11	
Anti-gas	•••	•••	•••	•••		2	
Interior economy	• • •	•••	• • •	•••	•••	20	
Standard tests			•••	•••	•••	10	
March discipline	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	10	
-				н	ours	420	

A portion of the instruction in march discipline, fire discipline, and visual training may be included in the collective training period.

12. Elementary collective training

Elementary collective training will be carried out by the training cadre and will include:—

i. Chapters VI and IX.

ii. The elements of section and platoon organization and open formations.

iii. Section battle formations (Sec. 19, 7).

iv. Elementary training in the use of ground.

A portion of the instruction in march discipline, fire discipline training, and visual training included in the syllabus for the individual portion of recruit training may be included in this period of cadre training.

13. Training after joining battalion

On joining his unit the recruit will be given the additional instruction in the light automatic necessary for passing the first eight tests of elementary training. As soon as possible after this has been done he will fire Table "A," Part VII.

He will also be given special instruction with the rifle until he has fired Table "A," Parts V and VI.

When opportunity offers the recruit's course of antigas training will be completed and anti-aircraft training will be given both with the rifle and light automatic.

CHAPTER III

ANNUAL TRAINING

14. Annual training

- 1. The annual training of the officer and soldier must be progressive and continuous. With this object the year will be divided into two periods, devoted respectively to:
 - i. Individual training.
 - ii. Collective training.

Commanders must draw up their own programmes of training, so as to ensure that the required standard of efficiency is reached within the time allotted.

2. The object of individual training is to prepare the individual officer, warrant officer, N.C.O., or man for the individual duties which he will be required to carry out in war. Particular attention will be paid during this period to the training of junior officers, warrant officers, and N.C.Os. with a view to their becoming efficient instructors.

On the care and attention devoted to individual training the success or failure of the subsequent collective training will in a great measure depend. Leave and furlough should be so arranged that each company will be as complete as possible during at least one month's individual training.

3. The object of collective training is to render units and formations capable of manœuvre and

- co-operation in battle. It should begin with the training of the section, and continue with that of the platoon, company, and larger units in succession.
- 4. The instruction of individuals and units is not to be considered as limited to the periods allotted for individual and collective training. Advantage must be taken of any opportunities which may arise for individual training during the period of collective training, and vice versa.
- 5. On the thoroughness of platoon training depends the efficiency of the company and battalion. Ample opportunity must therefore be given to platoon commanders to train their platoons.
- 6. Throughout all stages of training emphasis will be laid on the importance of sanitation. This term implies the practical application of certain well-established laws with regard to the preservation of health and the prevention of disease, as laid down in the Army Manual of Sanitation.
- 7. The annual training of units of the Militia, Supplementary Reserve, Territorial Army, etc., should be carried out on the same principles as have been laid down for the Regular Forces.
- 8. It is not possible for the infantry of the Militia, Supplementary Reserve, Territorial Army, etc., in the limited time for training at their disposal, to carry out the whole course, but the spirit of the instructions should be observed. Their annual training in camp should be principally devoted to collective training.

15. Individual training

(See also Training and Manœuvre Regulations, 1923, Chapter II)

1. The individual training season is the period of the year in which the foundations of the efficiency of the unit are laid.

It may be divided into two categories:-

- i. The training of the leader.
- ii. The training of the man.
- 2. In all wars, soldiers have been required who are disciplined, physically fit, and skilled with their weapons. In modern war, with its more powerful weapons and greater decentralization, the responsibility of the individual has been increased and he therefore requires a far higher degree of individual initiative than was formerly necessary.

Commanders must do all that they can to encourage initiative and individuality, remembering always that

these must be disciplined.

- 3. At the beginning of the individual training period specialists will be brought up to establishment and their training will commence. Extra men will also be trained to replace casualties caused by drafts, transfers to the reserve, etc. The turnover of machine gunners and range-takers (see Small Arms Training, Vol. III, 1931, Sec. 4, 3) will also be carried out.
- 4. The training of men considered to be potential N.C.Os. will receive particular attention.
- 5. During individual training men must be squadded for instruction in accordance with their ability, know-

ledge, and service. This will generally render it impossible for men to be squadded by sections, or even by platoons. Intelligent men should be pushed rapidly through the elementary work and given more advanced instruction, it being remembered that a thoroughly efficient private should be capable of leading a section.

6. Organization of work.—The opportunities afforded by the carrying out of the various employments about barracks should be made use of to train troops in individuality, foresight and proper organization, in order to produce the best output with the minimum of labour.

16. Individual training of the leader

- 1. The individual training of officers and N.C.Os. should aim at giving them the ability and knowledge:
 - i. To command and lead men in war.

ii. To be trainers of men in peace.

- iii. To fit themselves to command a unit higher than they command in peace.
- 2. This training will include:
 - i. The tactical training of all leaders from section leaders upwards, including the appreciation and use of ground.

ii. Instruction in the issue of orders, messages, and reports, both verbal and written.

- iii. The training of instructors in weapon training, drill, and other subjects.
- iv. The methods of fire direction and control.

v. Training in field engineering.

vi. Training in administrative dutie

vii. Attachments of officers to other arms of the service and to the R.A.F.

viii. The instruction of officers in riding and sword drill should also have attention.

3. Tactical training.—

i. Before the commencement of the collective training season, the leaders, from section commanders upwards, will be instructed in their duties and in dealing with the various situations with which their units are likely to be confronted in war. This training should consist of lectures and exercises without troops. It is far better for a leader to make his mistakes without his men than for his men to be manœuvred on unsound lines while the commander is gaining his experience.

Tactical exercises without troops should be held frequently throughout the individual training season (see Training and Manœuvre Regulations, 1923, Sec. 16). In this connection, the training value of setting schemes

should not be overlooked.

ii. The company commander will devote special attention to the training of platoon and section commanders in grasping situations rapidly, in issuing clear orders quickly to their men, and in adopting suitable dispositions for the task in hand.

iii. In all stages of training advantage must be taken of local conditions to teach those lessons for which the

ground available is best suited.

Sand models should be used for indoor instruction. (See Training and Manœuvre Regulations, 1923, Sec. 35, 3,)

iv. The successful handling of the platoon in war will depend largely on the initiative and powers of leadership

displayed by the section commanders. Their intelligence and appreciation of tactical principles must therefore be so trained and developed that once the role of their sections has been explained to them they can carry it out without further orders from the platoon commander.

- v. Section commanders will be instructed and exercised in :---
 - (a) The use of ground.(b) Formations.

(c) The principle of combining fire with movement and the use of cover and smoke.

(d) Fire control.

(e) The role of the section in attack, defence, and protection.

. (f) Making quick decisions, and giving verbal orders.

(g) Map reading and the use of the compass.

(h) Writing reports and messages.

(i) Defence against gas.

(j) Protection against aircraft.

(k) Field signals and semaphore.

- (1) The siting and construction of trenches and obstacles.
- (m) The conduct of patrols.

(n) Movement by night.

(o) Assault bridging.

(See also Infantry Section Leading.)

- vi. The training of company and platoon commanders will, in addition to the above, include:-
 - (a) Study of ground.

(b) Reconnaissance.

- (c) The issue of orders and messages, both verbal and written.
- (d) Dispositions for attack, defence, and protection.
- (e) Application of fire with special reference to fire direction.
- (f) Wood and village fighting.

(g) Co-operation with other arms.

(h) The temporary attachment of infantry officers to branches of the Service other than their own and to the R.A.F. will be arranged by higher commanders. Similarly officers of other branches will be temporarily attached to infantry units. In order that these attachments may not lose much of their value, it is essential that the officers should be given some executive command during their attachment.

ORDERS, REPORTS, AND MESSAGES

4. Officers and N.C.Os. must frequently be practised in issuing orders and in noting the essential points in orders received by them. Officers should be trained to express themselves clearly, tersely, and logically both verbally and on paper; in this connection value is obtained from making appreciations, and preparing lectures, discussions, and essays.

TRAINING OF INSTRUCTORS

5. i. All officers and N.C.Os. must be capable of training their men in their everyday duties. Overspecialization in such things as drill, physical training

(trained soldiers), weapon and anti-gas training, which are the duties of every officer and N.C.O., is not to be permitted.

- ii. Programmes should be prepared as far as possible for the attendance of officers and N.C.Os. at the various army schools of instruction and arrangements made for the candidates selected to receive adequate preparation.
- iii. The object of these army schools is to provide a supply of instructors having a thorough up-to-date knowledge of the various subjects. Arrangements will be made to ensure that this knowledge will be passed on by the students on returning to their units as early as possible to ensure that knowledge gained is confirmed and confidence in teaching is secured. The careful selection of suitable candidates is therefore of the greatest importance.
- iv. Training cadre.—A simple and efficient method of ensuring that the knowledge gained at the various wings of the Small Arms School is handed on in a unit is the institution of a battalion cadre during the individual training season. The object of the cadre should be to train junior officers and N.C.Os. as weapon training and anti-gas instructors. It may be dispensed with in cases where the instruction can be given adequately in companies. Tactical training should not be included in the cadre syllabus; this is the responsibility of the sub-unit commanders.
- v. It must be remembered that on mobilization a large number of officers and N.C.Os. will be required from battalions for duties in connection with the training of recruits, and for other purposes.

All officers, warrant officers, and N.C.Os. will fit themselves to carry out the duties of the rank higher than their own, and will be exercised accordingly.

ADMINISTRATIVE TRAINING

6. All officers and N.C.Os. will be given instruction in the various administrative duties with which they may be faced both in peace and war. This training will include instruction in the keeping of accounts, preparation of returns, pay duties, discipline, court martial procedure, courts of inquiry, etc.

Instruction will also be given in matters connected with ammunition supply, hygiene, billeting, and other

administrative subjects.

All ranks should appreciate the reasons for the various sanitary measures taken, and should realize that disease is generally due to dirt, carelessness, or lack of discipline, and that they are personally responsible for whole-hearted co-operation in these methods, and that a low percentage of sick in a unit is a sign of its efficiency.

17. Individual training of the man

- 1. The aim of individual training is to produce a formidable fighting man, having:
 - i. A high state of proficiency in the use of:-
 - (a) Ground.
 - (b) The various weapons and instruments with which he is equipped.
 - (c) The pick and shovel.
 - (d) The anti-gas respirator.

- ii. Physical fitness to enable long marches to be undertaken and fatigue endured without loss of efficiency.
- iii. A thorough knowledge of the individual duties he may be required to perform in battle.
- 2. This training will consist of :-
 - The training of soldiers in their individual duties in the section in war, including close order drill, fire discipline, and the use of ground.
 - ii. Training in the use of his weapons.

Every man should undergo the tests of elementary training as laid down in Small Arms Training and a record should be kept of the results. The training of indifferent shots will receive particular attention.

- iii. Practice for all ranks in visual training, including judging distance and the indication and recognition of targets.
- iv. Training of all ranks in anti-gas measures. The aim of training in the use of the respirator will be to ensure that all ranks will be able to use their weapons and instruments and to perform their normal duties, including marching, without loss of efficiency.
 - v. Semaphore signalling.
- vi. Instruction in the handling of entrenching tools and their use; the method of filing on to, and the marking of tasks; also the construction and erection of wire obstacles.
- vii. Assault bridging.

- viii. Physical training (trained soldier's). Every man should be exercised as laid down in the Manual of Physical Training.
 - ix. Training as scouts (see Infantry Section Leading, 1928, Chapter IX). All soldiers should be prepared to act as scouts.
 - x. Map reading.
 - xi. Training in packing and loading of the vehicles in use with the battalion.
 - xii. Training of specialists, including intelligence section personnel, signallers, range-takers, orderlies, stretcher bearers, transport drivers, farriers, etc.
- xiii. Training at night, to accustom the soldier to moving and working in the dark.
- xiv. Lectures with the object of developing a sense of personal honour, duty, patriotism, and esprit de corps.
- xv. Should facilities exist and time permit, the following training should also be carried out:—
 - (a) Knotting and lashing, and the use of spars.
 - (b) Revetment and drainage of trenches.
 - (c) Construction of shelters.
 - (d) Embarkation, disembarkation, entraining and detraining of animals and vehicles.
- 3. Further instructions having particular reference to the training of machine gunners are contained in Small Arms Training, Vol. III, 1931, Chapters II and III.

TRAINING OF ORDERLIES

- 4. In order that they may be able to supplement other means of intercommunication in battle (see Vol. II, 1931, Sec. 7, 11), orderlies must be specially trained to:
 - i. Use covered lines of approach.

ii. Read a map.

iii. Deliver verbal messages.

Accuracy in the transmission of verbal messages cannot be obtained without constant practice. The orderly must always be made to repeat a message before he is dispatched. On arrival he must call out loudly the designation of the person to whom the message is directed. The message must be delivered in a loud, steady voice.

THE TRAINING OF THE BATTALION INTELLIGENCE SECTION

5. i. Men must be carefully selected for training. They must be intelligent, and should possess good eyesight and sound physique. Those who have a natural sense of direction, are self-reliant and resourceful, will make the

most apt pupils.

The personnel of the battalion intelligence section are highly trained soldiers who are allotted special tasks to gain definite information, both as regards the enemy and our own troops, and thus form a special channel of battle intelligence. Normally they will not be used as patrols ahead of their own unit nor be given such missions as the occupation of tactical posts.

(Further details with regard to employment are

contained in Vol. II, and the Manual of Military Intelligence.)

ii. The training will include :-

(a) Observation both with and without glasses, and by listening.

(b) Use of ground to sereen movement and the

memorizing of ground.

- (c) Map reading, including the use of the prismatic eompass, and how to find direction by the sun and stars.
- (d) Judging distance.
- (e) Writing reports and messages and the production of simple sketches.
- (f) Organization of their own and other arms.
- (g) Recognition of aircraft.
- (h) Anti-gas intelligence work.
- (i) Use of air photographs.
- (j) Concealment. Use of light and shade.
- (k) Night work.
- (1) Quick decisions.
- (m) Means of signalling.

Intelligence personnel must be acquainted with the system of intercommunication for reporting items of intelligence.

- iii. In order to observe, a man must know:-
 - (a) What to look for: such as movement, changes and contrasts, curious and unnatural objects, signs of the enemy in dust, smoke, tracks, and in the glint or clear outline of objects like a helmet or the barrel of a rifle.

(b) Where to look for it: by putting himself in the enemy's place and so deciding which are the most likely points to examine.

(c) How to look: always to act as though he were being watched. To see quickly without being seen and to expose himself, when

necessary, very gradually.

(d) How to listen: to interpret sounds, such as birds alarmed and birds undisturbed, the breaking of twigs, movement through grass, wiring, or cutting wire. To maintain perfect silence, noting the wind and the ground.

(c) How to avoid being heard: by balancing and feeling his way, raising his feet and avoiding rustling leaves or crackling twigs.

iv. To find his way a man must learn to note the direction of the wind, the lie of the ground, the time he takes to cover various distances, marking the route and the appearance of landmarks from both sides, to help his return. This should be a different route from the way by which he went out.

v. The N.C.O. of the battalion intelligence section will, in addition, be specially trained in verifying reports, selecting posts, and in taking the section officer's place when the latter leaves his headquarters, etc.

vi. The officer in charge of the battalion intelligence section will be trained:—

(a) To deal with all intelligence reports received at battalion headquarters from forward units and his own section, and to ensure the rapid transmission of intelligence as necessary to brigade headquarters.

- (b) To arrange for constant observation and the supply of early and accurate information to his battalion commander, including the probable action of the enemy.
- (c) To organize his section so that at least one pair of men will always be ready for special unexpected tasks.

18. Collective training

- * 1. Object.—The object of collective training is to render units and sub-units capable of manœuvre and co-operation in battle. It should begin with the training of the section and continue with that of the platoon, company, and larger units in succession.
- 2. Syllabus of training.—Training in field operations will be carried out in accordance with the principles laid down in Infantry Training, Vol. II, Infantry Section Leading, and other training manuals.

These principles are based upon wide experience and their value has been proved. But principles on paper

apart from their application have little value.

Training in the following subjects will be included:—

- i. The use of ground.
- ii. The principle of fire and movement, and the application of fire.
- iii. The attack.
- iv. Defence.
 - v. Withdrawal.
- vi. Protection (including protection from the air and against gas).

vii. Reorganization.

viii. March discipline. (See Chapter X.)

ix. Operations by night. (See Sec. 19, 5.)

"x. Open formations. (See Sec. 19, 6.)

xi. Field entrenchments, wiring and road blocks.

xii. Assault bridging.

xiii. Use and conduct of patrols. (See Sec. 19, 4.)

xiv. Occupation and preparation of quarters. (See F.S.R. I.)

xv. Sanitation.

Further instructions regarding machine gun training are included in Small Arms Training, Vol. III.

3. Programmes.—Before the period of collective training actually begins, commanders of platoons and larger bodies will prepare programmes for the whole of the time allotted to them, so as to ensure that all phases of training receive adequate attention.

These programmes will be submitted to their immediate commanders, who will be responsible that they are co-ordinated, that they conform with the principles laid down in the training manuals, and that they make

the best use of the ground and time available.

TRAINING OF SECTION AND PLATOON

- 4. i. The collective training of the men will be carried out in their sections and platoons under their own commanders.
- ii. All N.C.Os. and men of the section or platoon, and those not exempted in para. 6, ii, below, must be present for this training.

- iii. Platoon commanders will prepare a programme of work to be carried out during the period allotted for section and platoon training.
- iv. During this training special attention will be devoted to developing the tactical knowledge of the men, to enable them to apply the lessons learnt during individual training to the ground and the various situations of the battlefield.
- v. The section is the largest unit which can be personally controlled by its leader throughout the battle. After the first stages of training have been completed, over-centralization of control by company and platoon commanders must be avoided; it is not possible in war and will invariably break down in battle. Successful instruction depends on every man in every section understanding clearly, before the exercise commences, what is the role and objective of his platoon and section and how it is to be carried out.

Time employed in explanation is time well spent.

COMPANY TRAINING

- 5. i. During the first months of the collective training period, each company will be struck off all duties for a special course of training in field operations and for the annual course of weapon training.
- ii. When the company commander considers that his platoons are fit to take their places in the company, the latter will be exercised as a whole. (See also Small Arms Training, Vol. III, 1931, Sec. 9.)
- iii. During company training, schemes should be set by the battalion commander to give the company com-

manders an opportunity of practising the command of their units, and to enable the battalion commander to judge if the training of the company is being carried out on the lines he desires.

iv. Co-operation between rifle companies and machine gun platoons must be constantly studied. In tactical exercises a proportion of machine guns should, whenever possible, be allotted to work with rifle companies.

v. In the later stages of company training it is important that situations should be worked out to their logical conclusion, and that troops should be practised in delivering and receiving an assault, in methods of consolidation, in the pursuit, in assuming the offensive from the defensive, and in withdrawals; also in keeping direction and the orderly continuance of operations after units have become mixed and commanders incapacitated. During this period a company should occasionally be made up to war strength in order to practise commanders in handling their units under active service conditions. At the end of the course the company should, where local conditions admit, carry out continuous training of about three days' duration, for which a special scheme should be prepared.

vi. Instruction will also be given in such field engineering as might be required to be undertaken by infantry in war. Officers and N.C.Os. should be instructed and practised in the organization of work, including timely preparation and efficient distribution of men, tools, and materials on the work.

The soldier should have learned during the period of individual training how to use the various tools, and the elementary principles of field fortification. During his training in field operations he should be taught to apply his knowledge to various tactical situations, e.g. attack, consolidation, defence, protection, etc.

H.Q. WING TRAINING

- 6, i. The training of the headquarter wing will be carried out as follows:—
 - (a) All groups will be exercised in the annual course of weapon training as laid down in Small Arms Training.

(b) Signallers will be trained in accordance with the instructions contained in the Signalling

Manual.

(c) All N.C.Os. and men of the headquarter wing will be trained in the particular duties they will perform in war. This will, in some cases, entail certain personnel carrying out training in these duties with companies.

(d) In addition, those personnel not exempted in sub-para. ii, below, will be attached to sections and platoous of companies for

collective training.

ii. All officers, N.C.Os., and men will be attached to companies and undergo collective training except signallers, full bandsmen, drummers or buglers, transport men, and those exempted from the annual course of weapon training.

BATTALION TRAINING

7. i. When company training has been completed, the battalion will be struck off all duties for battalion training, to enable the commander to co-ordinate and

direct the action of the component parts of his battalion, and to practise his subordinate commanders in command and mutual co-operation.

ii. Whenever possible, arrangements should be made for cavalry, artillery, engineers, tanks, and aircraft to co-operate with infantry during battalion training. The action and effect of these arms, and the action and effect of aircraft and smoke, must be considered in the solution of tactical problems. Even if complete units of other arms are unable to attend, officers from them should be detailed to assist the battalion commander.

19. General instructions

PREPARATION AND EXECUTION OF SCHEMES

1. Instructions with regard to the preparation and execution of schemes are contained in Training and Manœuvre Regulations.

GROUND

(See also Sec. 3, 19)

2. Throughout the training period particular attention will be devoted to the use of ground. (See Vol. II, 1931, Sec. 6.)

Ground plays a vital part in tactics. The application of broad tactical principles to ground requires constant practice.

The skilful use of ground may often compensate for lack of fire power and allow freedom of

manœuvre to be maintained.

The use of ground can best be taught by practical demonstration which must be followed by ample practice.

The soldier should be made to understand that it is good cover which enables him to use his weapon to the best advantage while exposing himself as little as possible.

Moving objects catch the eye more quickly than those that are still, and when, in default of cover, men are lying in the open, all but the necessary movements to load and fire must be avoided. The skyline should be avoided and the value of shade as protection from view should be recognized.

The use which may be made of ground by the enemy

should always receive consideration.

DRILL

(See also Sec. 2, 11)

3. A high standard of discipline must be maintained during training. Each day's work should include a short period of close order drill.

TRAINING IN THE CONDUCT AND DUTIES OF INFANTRY PATROLS

4. i. The employment of patrols is described in Vol. II, and in Infantry Section Leading.

ii. Reconnoitring patrols are used to give warning of the presence and movement of the enemy and to ascertain his dispositions, to reconnoitre lines of advance, and to

maintain touch with flanking units.

Fighting patrols are employed to obtain information about the enemy, which will probably entail driving in his scouts and patrols; to obtain identifications, to harass the enemy, and to secure and hold isolated points in advance of their units.

iii. Training in the conduct of patrols should commence during the section and platoon training periods and continue throughout the collective training season. Such training encourages the spirit of inquisitiveness and develops individual initiative.

TRAINING IN NIGHT OPERATIONS (See also Vol. II, 1931, Chapter VI)

5. i. The chief object of this training is to accustom the soldier to moving in the dark, so that individuals and units can act with confidence by night. The instruction will commence during individual training and will be carried out progressively.

ii. The following may be taken as a general guide as to the methods to be adopted, only the more elementary

being used in the period of individual training:-

(a) Visual training.—One man of a section should march away and be stopped by voice or prearranged signal as soon as he is out of sight. He should call out the number of paces he has taken. The same man should then advance towards the section from some distance further off and be stopped as soon as he becomes visible, later counting his paces to the section.

It should be explained that:-

(i.) Ability to see in the dark increases with

practice.

(ii.) Objects are more visible when the moon is behind the observer than when it is in front of him.

(iii.) An observer may stand up when he has a definite background and should lie down when he has not.

When the men have been practised in observing a man approaching at a walk, they should be similarly practised in observing a man who is endeavouring to approach unseen.

(b) Training in hearing.—Instruction will be carried out on similar lines to visual training. At first the advance of a single man should be listened for; gradually the number should be increased so that facility may be acquired in judging the strength of a party approaching.

acquired in judging the strength of a party approaching. Listening should be practised on various types of ground, e.g. open and close country, across and in valleys,

in woods, etc.

- (c) Silent advances.—At first individual instruction should be given without arms; later the company should be taken out in marching order and should practise advancing noiselessly on roads, and in various formations over open ground, with whispered words of command. Precautions should be taken to prevent equipment rattling, and arms must not be allowed to clash.
- (d) Training in orientation.—The training should be individual and conducted by means of demonstrations and questions. Men should be able to distinguish the Pole Star (or in the Southern Hemisphere the Southern Cross), and should also be instructed in the identification by night of natural objects as guides to direction.
- (e) Reconnaissance prior to advances and attacks.—At first, the point marking the objective for the night attack should be either some conspicuous object or should be marked by a flag. Men should not be allowed to approach nearer to the position than a point from which they might hope to avoid detection in daylight. From this point they should survey the line of approach

to the objective by day. After dark, men working in pairs should advance on the objective from the point from which the reconnaissance was made by day. Men should be instructed in taking notes (written or mental) during the day reconnaissance, and should, prior to the night work, be questioned on the same. As proficiency increases the same procedure should be adopted with less conspicuous objectives.

(f) Entrenching at night.—Men should be instructed how to carry entrenching tools quietly, and in the construction of various types of defences, in the dark as

silently and quickly as possible.

(g) Intercommunication and verbal messages.—Messages should be passed in a whisper from man to man, the final message received being checked by the original. Orderlies should also be trained in carrying messages at night.

OPEN FORMATIONS

- 6. i. When a unit is liable to come under artillery fire or to be subject to aircraft attack, but is not committed to action, it may be necessary to adopt an open formation.
- ii. Quickness in adopting such a formation is of vital importance, and must be practised constantly during training so that all ranks may become thoroughly flexible in their movements.
 - It is easier to carry out movements which are thoroughly ingrained in the minds of the troops than to improvise them on the spur of the moment.

Thus, battalion and company commanders can retain complete and instant control of their commands even - though the latter are dispersed.

iii. Control is by means of the ordinary field signals detailed in Chapter IX, with special use of the "EXTEND" signal.

iv. Once the battalion has opened out, company commanders become responsible for the formation of their companies. Similarly, as soon as the company or platoon has been deployed, the responsibility for the formation of platoons and sections respectively devolves upon their own commanders.

v. The normal deploying intervals and distances will be 400 yards between companies, 200 yards between platoons, and 100 yards between sections. These intervals and distances may be varied to suit the ground

or other circumstances.

vi. Deployments will be carried out at the double unless the cautionary signal "quick time" is given prior to the deploy signal.

vii. The normal methods of deployment of a battalion moving in column of route are shown in Plate XXIV.

The signal for moving the battalion into open formation is the "EXTEND." On this the leading company will move forward and out to the right until it is 400 yards ahead of the third, while the second company moves forward and out to the left until it is on roughly the same alignment, and at 400 yards' interval from the first company. Meanwhile, the third and fourth companies will move straight out at right angles to right and left respectively until they are at 400 yards' interval from each other.

viii. The company and platoon may also be deployed by signal into open formation.

The rules and signals are the same as for the battalion,

except that the normal distances and intervals will be 200 yards between platoons and 100 yards between sections.

In the deployment of the machine-gun platoon the two sections will act in the same way as the two leading sections of a rifle platoon; any further extension necessary will be carried out as in para. 7, below.

ix. In the case of the company and platoon, the formation described above will often be generally suitable for movement when in close proximity to the enemy.

x. On the "close" signal from the battalion, company or platoon commander, the companies, platoons or sections will resume the formation in which they were moving before receiving the order to deploy.

SECTION BATTLE FORMATIONS (See Infantry Section Leading)

- 7. i. Once the platoon has been deployed, the formation to be adopted by each section is the responsibility of the section commander.
 - ii. This formation may be (see Plate XXV):—
 - (a) Single file.(b) File.

 - (c) Extended line.
 - (d) Arrow head.

Extensions into line or arrow head will invariably be carried out at the double; closing, however, will normally be carried out in quick time.

- iii. Section commanders must be trained to know:-
 - (a) Which formation to adopt under varying circumstances.

- (b) How to get his section rapidly into the formation selected, either by order or signal.
- iv. The formation selected depends upon :-

(a) The degree of control necessary.

(b) Fire production.

(c) Vulnerability.

(d) Ground.

The section commander must avoid deploying to an extended line until forced to do so, in view of the loss of control entailed.

v. Once the section commander has understood the above, practice in various situations is necessary, until he instinctively forms his decision without any delay. Sections should be practised in following their com-

Sections should be practised in following their commanders over rough country under control in the various formations.

vi. The above considerations are applicable to both rifle and light automatic sections, but the formations adopted when the sections stop to open fire are different. With a rifle section the firing formation is normally the movement formation halted, each man adjusting his position to the ground, his main object being the free use of his rifle.

When a light automatic section occupies a fire position, the men must be so disposed as to make the best use of the accidents of the ground, for the purpose of serving the gun, according to whether their individual duties are in the nature of firing, feeding, supplying ammunition, observation, or protection.

vii. During movements in file or single file the rifle will be carried normally either slung or at the *trail*, the decision depending on the rapidity required to bring the

rifle into action. In extended line or arrow head the rifle will be carried at the trail, or if bayonets are fixed at the high port.

viii. Formal orders will be replaced by signals or brief instructions from the section commander, e.g. "Behind me, File"; "On my right and left, . . . paces"; "Across that bridge and line the bank"; "Arrow head," etc. Such instructions should be firm and simple; they require just as much discipline on the part of the men, and control on the part of the leader, as close order drill.

PART II-DRILL

CHAPTER IV

SQUAD DRILL

20. General instructions for drilling recruits

- 1. The object of drill is to teach troops by exercise, to obey orders and to do so in the correct way. For this reason drill is the foundation of discipline and esprit de corps.
- 2. Slovenly drill is harmful; all movements on parade are to be performed smartly. Noisy stamping of the feet in such movements as turning, coming to attention, or standing at ease is forbidden.
- 3. The detail of drill movements as given in the following sections is for the information of instructors only. It will not be repeated word for word to the men on parade.
- 4. When recruits are being taught a particular motion or exercise, the instructor will first form the squad round him and explain what is required in simple language. As soon as he is satisfied that his meaning is clear, he will proceed to the second stage—demonstration—by performing the motion himself. During this stage he will point out details he has already described, and give examples of common faults. The men will then be made to perform the movement themselves, the instructor taking each in turn and correcting faults.

- 5. Recruits will be taught that when on parade it is the duty of every man to see that he is at all times in the correct dressing from whichever flank is the directing flank. This principle applies both when falling in and during and on the completion of all parade movements, except that in ceremonial drill men will not correct their dressing on the completion of a movement until they receive the command Right (or Left)—Dress.
- 6. The instructor will explain the reason and importance of all drill movements and formations to the parade, and their application in the field.
- 7. Men should be given frequent rests between exercises.
- 8. With practice, men will be able to stand steady in the ranks for long periods without effort, but, at first, they should not be kept in any position long enough to produce strain or fatigue. When the men of a squad are being tested separately in any movement those not under instruction at the moment should be ordered to stand easy or to continue practising the movement.

21. Words of command

1. Young officers and N.C.Os. will be practised in

giving words of command.

This practice gives instructors confidence in themselves and accustoms them to use their voice in the best manner to produce the desired result. Words of command should be pronounced distinctly and loud enough to be heard by all concerned. A word of command to a squad of six men need not be as loud as a command to a battalion. Provided that all concerned can hear, good

drill depends more on the manner in which words of command are given than on the power of the instructor's lungs.

- 2. Commands which consist of one word will be preceded by a caution, which may be part of the word itself. The caution, or cautionary part of a word of command, will be given deliberately and distinctly: the last or executive part, which, as a rule, should consist of only one word or syllable, will be given sharply: as Platoon, (slowly)—Halt (sharply): Right (slowly)—Form (sharply). A pause will be made between the caution and the executive word of command.
- 3. The cautions and commands in this manual are, as a rule, given with regard to one flank only, but the same principles apply equally to movements to the other flank, which will also be practised.
- 4. Words of command must be given at all times with precision by all ranks; indistinct and slovenly words of command produce slovenly movements and must be avoided.
- 5. Instructors when giving words of command must stand at attention and themselves adopt a correct bearing, and so be an example of alertness to their men.

6. It should be remembered that a word of command is an order which must be smartly and promptly obeyed.

Instructors must observe the result of their commands at drill and check any tendency on the part of the men to carry out a movement in a slovenly manner. For instance, when men are called to attention or are ordered to stand at ease absolute steadiness and silence must be insisted on and talking must be prohibited when

men are standing easy. Plenty of time should therefore be taken over the correct performance of one movement before proceeding with the next. If faults and slack habits are passed over in the early stages they will, in time, undermine discipline without which no troops can train or fight.

- 7. The words of command laid down for use in close order drill are not intended for use in movements in the field. They are designed with a view to training the soldier's mind and body to habits of strict obedience to the will of the leader. In movements in the field, words of command will be replaced by short instructions, e.g. along this track in single file; open out into section groups over that field, Nos. 1 and 2 sections leading at 150 yards interval. Nos. 3 and 4 following at 100 yards distance; follow me across this bridge; get under cover of this bank, etc.
- 8. The following table shows when to give words of command to men on the move during close order drill:—

Word of Cottimand	Slow Time	Quick Time
Ahout Turn Right Turn " In—cline " Form Left Turn " In—cline ", Form	As the left foot is coming to the ground. As the right foot is coming to the ground. As the left foot is passing and level with the right foot. As the right is passing and level with the left foot. When the left foot is on the ground.	As the right foot is coming to the ground. As the left foot is coming to the ground. As the right foot is coming to the ground. As the left foot is coming to the ground. When the left foot is coming to the ground.

Word of command	Slow Time	Quick Time
Form Fours (front rank in front).	When the right foot is passing and level with the left foot.	When the left foot is on the ground.
Form Two-Deep (front rank in front).	Do.	Do
Form Fours (rear rank in front).	When the left foot is passing and level with the right foot.	When the right foot is on the ground.
Form Two-Deep (rear rank in front).	Do.	Do,
Form Squad or Platoon (right leading).	When the left foot is coming to the ground.	When the right toot is coming to the ground.
Form Squad or Platoon (left leading).	When the right foot is coming to the ground.	When the left foot is coming to the ground.
Break into Quick Time. Quick March.	When the right foot is on the ground.	
Break into Slow Time. Slow March.	-	When the left foot is coming to the ground.
Mark Time	As the left foot is coming to the ground.	As the right foot is coming to the ground.
Halt (when mark- ing time).	As the right foot leaves the ground.	As the left foot is coming to the ground.

When drilling a battalion, words of command must be a given a little earlier.

*9. To move off a unit in step with the preceding unit the command quick (or slow) should be given as the left feet of the preceding unit are coming to the ground, march, as the right feet are coming to the ground.

10. In the detail of squad drill the title of the movement is shown in *italics* and is followed by the cautionary or executive word of command in **thick type**. Cautions and words of command referred to in the detail are printed in *italics*.

22. Inspection

1. Whenever a squad, parading in two ranks, is to be inspected the ranks will be opened for the inspection or closed on its completion by the following orders:—

Open order—March. The rear rank will step back two paces and dress by the right.

Close order—March. The rear rank will step forward two paces.

- 2. The instructor will pay attention to the personal cleanliness of the men as well as to the care of their arms, equipment, and clothing. A clean and smart turn-out must be insisted on at all times. In this respect instructors must set a high standard for young soldiers to emulate: Men learn good habits more quickly by example than by other methods.
- 3. Instructors will be trained in methods of inspection so that, with practice, they will be able to tell at a glance whether each man on parade is correctly turned out or not.

SQUAD DRILL WITHOUT ARMS

SQUAD DRILL WITH INTERVALS

- 23. Formation of squads with intervals
- 1. A few men will be placed in single rank at arm's length apart; while so formed, they will be termed a squad with intervals.

- 2. Instruction can best be imparted to a squad in single rank, but, if want of space makes it necessary, the squad may consist of two ranks, in which case the men of the rear rank will cover the intervals between the mon in the front rank, so that in marching they may take their own points, as directed in Sec. 31, 4.
- 3. When recruits have learned to dress as described in Sec. 27, they will be taught to fall in, and to dress and correct their intervals immediately without any further order. After they have been instructed as far as Sec. 36, they may fall in as directed in Sec. 37.
- 4. Care must be taken that the positions of recruits in the ranks are changed frequently, as they must be taught to drill correctly in any position in the squad.

24. Attention

Squad—Attention.

Spring up to the following position:—Heels together and in line. Feet turned out at an angle of about 45 degrees. Knees straight. Body erect and carried evenly over the thighs, with the shoulders (which should be level and square to the front) down and moderately back—this should bring the chest to its natural forward position without any straining or stiffening. Arms hanging from the shoulders as straight as the natural bend of the arm will allow. Wrists straight. Hands closed but not clenched. Backs of the fingers touching the thigh lightly, thumb to the front and close to the forefinger, thumb immediately behind the seam of the trousers. Neck erect. Head balanced evenly on the neck and not poked forward, eyes looking their own height and straight to the front. height and straight to the front.

The weight of the body should be balanced on both feet and evenly distributed between the fore part of the feet and the heels.

The breathing must not in any way be restricted, and no part of the body should be either drawn in or pushed out.

The position is one of readiness in expectation of the word of command.

Note.—Rifle and English light infantry regiments do not use the word attention, but come to attention on the command squad, company, battalion, or other unit being named.

25. Standing at ease

Stand at—Ease.

Keep the leg straight, carry the left foot about 12 inches to the left so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. At the same time carry the hands behind the back and place the back of the right hand in the palm of the left, grasping it lightly with the finger and thumb, and allowing the arms to hang at their full extent.

- i. In marching order without the rifle the arms will be retained as in the position of attention.
- ii. When a recruit falls in he will stand at ease after he has got his dressing.

26. Standing easy

Stand-Easy.

The limbs, head, and body may be moved but the man will not move his feet, so that on coming to attention there will be no loss of dressing. Slouching attitudes

are not to be permitted. If either foot is moved men are inclined to lose their dressing.

On the caution squad, etc., the correct position of

stand at ease will be assumed.

27. Dressing a squad with intervals

Right-Dress.

Each recruit, except the right-hand man, will turn his head and eyes to the right and at the same time extend his right arm, back of the hand upwards, finger tips touching the shoulder of the man on his right. He will then take up his dressing in line by moving, with short quick steps, till he is just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him. Care must be taken to carry the body backward or forward with the feet, the shoulders being kept perfectly square in their original position.

Eyes-Front.

The head and eyes will be turned smartly to the front, the arm cut away to the side, and the position of attention resumed.

28. Turning by numbers

1. Turning to the Right-One.

Keeping both knees straight and the body erect, turn to the right on the right heel and left toe, raising the left heel and right toe in doing so.

On the completion of this preliminary movement, the right foot must be flat on the ground and the left heel raised; both knees straight, and the weight of the body, which must be erect, on the right foot.

Two.

Bring the left foot smartly up to the right.

2. Turning to the Left-One.

As for above, except for right read left and vice versa.

Two.

Bring the right foot smartly up to the left.

3. Turning About-One.

Keeping both knees straight and the body erect, turn to the right-about on the right heel and left toe, raising the right toe and left heel in doing so, but keeping the right heel firmly on the ground.

On the completion of this preliminary movement the right foot must be flat on the ground and the left heel raised; both knees straight, and the weight of the body,

which must be erect, on the right foot.

Two.

Bring the left foot smartly up to the right.

4. Inclining to the Right—One.

As described for turning to the right, but turning only half-right.

Two.

As described for turning to the right.

5. Inclining to the Left-One.

As described for turning to the left, but turning only half-left.

Two.

'As described for turning to the left.

- 6. Throughout all turns the arms must be kept close to the sides as in the position of attention.
- 7. In turning "judging the time" commands are Right (or Left) or About—Turn, Right (or Left) In—cline; the movements described above will be carried out on the command Turn or In—cline, observing the two distinct motions.

29. Length of pace and time in marching

1. Length of pace.—In slow and in quick time the length of a pace is 30 inches. In stepping out it is 33 inches, in double time, 40; in stepping short, 21; and in the side pace, 12 inches.

When a soldier takes a side pace to clear or cover another, as in forming fours, Sec. 52, the pace will be

24 inches.

2. Time.—In slow time 70 paces are taken in one minute. In quick time 120 paces, equal to 100 yards in a minute, or three miles, 720 yards in an hour, are taken. Except during the first weeks of recruit training, recruits, when not in marching order, will take 130 paces a minute in quick time at drill.

In double time 180 paces, equal to 200 yards a minute, are taken. The time of the side pace is the same as for

quick time.

Distances of 100 and 200 yards will be marked on the drill ground, and N.C.Os. and men practised in keeping correct time and length of pace.

3. On ceremonial and drill parades Rifle and English light infantry regiments, when not brigaded with other troops, march at the rate of 140 paces a minute.

30. The drum and pace stick

- 1. Recruits are not to be taught to march without the constant use of the drum and pace stick.
- 2. Before the squad is put in motion a drummer will beat the time in which the men are to march, the men paying careful attention. The squad will then be marched on, and the drummer will beat the time occasionally while the men are on the move.
- 3. In order to ascertain whether the time is beaten correctly, a metronome should be used.
- 4. The length of the pace in marching should be corrected with the pace stick, the accuracy of which should occasionally be tested by measurement.

31. Position in marching

- 1. In marching, the soldier will maintain the position of the head and body as directed in Sec. 24. He must be well balanced. In slow time his arms and hands must be kept steady by his sides. In quick time the arms, which should be as straight as their natural bend will allow, should swing naturally from the shoulder. Hands should be kept closed but not clenched.
- 2. The legs should be swung forward freely and naturally from the hip joints, each leg as it swings forward being bent sufficiently at the knee to enable the foot to clear the ground. The foot should be carried straight to the front, and, without being drawn back, placed upon the ground with the knee straight, but so as not to jerk the body.

- 3. Although several recruits may be drilled together in a squad with intervals, they must act independently, precisely as if they were being instructed singly. They will thus learn to march in a straight line, and to take a correct pace, both as regards length and time, without reference to the other men of the squad.
- 4. Before the squad is put in motion the instructor will take care that each man is square to the front and in correct line with the remainder. The recruit will be taught to take a point straight to his front, by fixing his eyes upon some distant object, and then observing some nearer point in the same straight line, such as a stone, tuft of grass, or other object. The same procedure will be followed by the man on the named flank or by the named number, when marching in other formations (see Sec. 41).

32. Marching in quick and slow time

1. The quick march.

The Squad will Advance. Quick-March.

The squad will step off together with the left foot, in quick time, observing the rules in Sec. 31.

2. The slow march.

During recruit training squad drill should be frequently practised in slow time only. The executive word of command will be Slow—March. The men will step off and march as described for Quick March, but in slow time, and keeping the arms and hands steady at the sides, thumbs to the front. Each lcg will be brought forward in one even motion and will be straightened as it comes to the front with the toes pointed downwards and placed on the ground before the heel.

3. The halt.

Squad-Halt.

A pace of 30 inches will be completed with the left foot and the right foot brought up in line with it. At the same time the right hand will be cut smartly to the side.

4. Stepping out.

Step-Out.

The moving foot will complete its pace, and the soldier will lengthen the pace by three inches, leaning forward a little, but without altering the time.

This step is used when a slight increase of speed, without an alteration of time, is required; on the command Quick (or Slow)—March the normal length of pace will be resumed.

5. Stepping short.

Step-Short.

The foot advancing will complete its pace, after which the pace will be shortened by nine inches until the command *Quick* (or *Slow*)—*March* is given, when the normal length of pace will be resumed.

6. Marking time.

Mark-Time.

The foot then advancing will complete its pace, after which the time will be continued, without advancing, by raising each foot alternately about six inches, keeping the feet almost parallel with the ground, the knees raised to the front, the arms steady at the sides, and the body steady. On the command For—ward, the pace at which the men were moving will be resumed.

In slow time the feet should be raised twelve inches when marking time, the ball of the foot being immediately below the point of the knee, toes pointing downwards.

- 7. Stepping back from the halt.
- ... Paces. Step back-March.

Step back the named number of paces of 30 inches straight to the rear, commencing with the left foot, keeping the arms still by the sides.

Stepping back should not exceed four paces.

33. Changing step

1. When on the march.

Change-Step.

The advancing foot will complete its pace, and the ball of the rear foot will be brought up to the heel of the advanced one, which will make another step forward, so that the time will not be lost, two successive steps being taken with the same foot.

2. When marking time.

Change-Step.

Make two successive beats with the same foot.

34. Marching in double time

1. The double march.

The Squad will Advance. Double-March.

Step off with the left foot and double on the toes with easy swinging strides, inclining the body slightly forward, but maintaining its correct carriage. The feet must be picked up cleanly from the ground, at each pace, and the thigh, knee, and ankle joints must all work freely and without stiffness. The whole body should be carried forward by a thrust from the rear foot without unnecessary effort. The heels must not be raised towards the seat, but the foot carried straight to the front and the toes placed lightly on the ground. The arms should swing easily from the shoulders and should be bent at the elbow, the forearm forming an angle of about 135 degrees with the upper arm (i.e. midway between a straight arm and a right angle at the elbow), fists slightly clenched, backs of the hands outwards, and the arms swung sufficiently clear of the body to allow of full freedom for the chest. The shoulders should be kept steady and square to the front and the head erect.

2. The halt.

Squad-Halt.

As in Sec. 32, 3, at the same time cutting away the hands to the position of attention.

3. Marking time.

Mark-Time.

Act as in Sec. 32, 6, the arms and hands being carried as when marching in double time, but without swinging the arms.

35. The side step

1. Closing to the right (or left).

Right (or Left) Close—March, or . . . Paces Right (or Left) Close—March.

Each man will carry his right foot 12 inches direct to the right, and instantly close his left foot to it, thus completing the pace; he will proceed to take the next pace in the same manner. Shoulders to be kept square. The direction must be kept in a straight line to the flank.

2. The halt.

Squad-Halt.

On the command *Halt*, which will be given when the number of paces has not been specified, the men will complete the pace they are taking, and remain steady.

3. Soldiers should not usually be moved to a flank by the side step more than 12 paces.

36. Turning when on the march

1. Right (or Left)—Turn.

On the command Right (or Left)—Turn the left (or right) foot will be brought forward until it is just in front of the right (or left) foot, and each man will then turn smartly in the required direction, using his left (or right) foot as a pivot, and advance a full pace of 30 inches in the new direction with the right (or left) foot.

The turn to the right must be made off the left foot

and to the left off the right foot.

2. About-Turn.

Complete the pace with the right foot, then commence the turn with the left foot, the turn being completed in three beats of the time in which the soldier is marching. Having completed the turn about, the soldier will at once move forward, the fourth pace being a full one and taken with the right foot.

In the case of a squad with a blank file, marching in line, the blank file will mark time two paces on the word about thus gaining his position in the new front rank

before the turn is completed. Guides should act in a similar manner.

3. Right (or Left) In-cline.

On the command *In—cline*, as in para. 1, but make a half turn in the required direction.

4. Turnings and changes on the march should always be preceded by a cautionary word of command, e.g. The squad will move to the right—The Squad will advance—Break into slow time—Diagonal march, etc.

SQUAD DRILL IN SINGLE RANK

37. Formation of squads in single rank

Recruits will at this stage be formed in single rank without intervals, each man occupying a lateral space of 24 inches. Thus ten men occupy eight paces. The accuracy of the space should be frequently tested. Squads will fall in and dress by the right unless otherwise ordered.

38. Dressing in single rank

Right (or Left)-Dress.

- 1. Each man, except the man on the named flank, will look towards the flank by which he is to dress with a smart turn of the head, and, commencing with the man nearest the flank by which the dressing is made will move up or back to his place successively. When the squad is correctly dressed the instructor will give the command Eyes—Front.
- 2. The above method will be taught for use on ceremonial parades only. On all other occasions each man will take up his dressing from the directing flank

without any word of command, each man in succession turning his head and eyes to the front when in the correct alignment.

39. Numbering a squad

Squad—Number.

The squad will number off from the right, the right-hand man calling out *One*, the next on his left *Two*, and so on. Each man as he calls out his number will keep his head steady and continue to look straight to his front.

40. Opening and closing a squad

1. Open Ranks-March.

The odd numbers will take two paces forward; when the paces are completed the squad may be dressed as in Sec. 38.

2. Reform Ranks-March.

The odd numbers will step back two paces; when the paces are completed the squad will dress as in Sec. 38, 2.

41. Marching in single rank

1. To advance in quick time.

The Squad will Advance. By the Right (or Left or By No.), Quick-March.

As in Sec. 32, 1. Each man will preserve his position in the general line by an occasional glance towards the directing man who will act as in Sec. 31, 4.

2. To advance in double time.

The Squad will Advance. By the Right (or Left or By No.), Double-March.

As in para. I above, but in double time.

42. Changing the pace from quick to double time, and vice versa

1. From quick time to double time.

Break into double time. Double-March.

Complete the next pace in quick time and then continue in double time as in Sec. 34.

2. From double time to quick time.

Break into quick time. Quick-March.

Complete the next pace in double time and then break into quick time, dropping the arms to their usual position.

43. The diagonal march. (Plate II, Fig. 1.)

1. The right diagonal march.

Diagonal march. Right In-cline.

Each man will make a half turn in the required direction, and, if on the march, will move diagonally in that direction, as in Sec. 36.

2. Should the squad be required to move in the original direction the command will be—The Squad will advance. Left In—cline.

44. Changing direction. (Plate II, Fig. 2.)

1. When halted.

Change direction Right. Right-Form.

The right-hand man will make a full turn in the required direction, and the remainder a right incline.

Quick-March.

The right-hand man will lead on two paces and mark time, and the remainder will mark time in succession when they come up into the new alignment.

For-ward.

The squad will move forward in the new direction.

2. When on the move.

Change direction Right. Right-Form.

The right-hand man will make a full turn in the required direction, lead on two paces, and mark time; the remainder will incline to the right and mark time in succession as they come up into the new alignment.

For-ward.

The squad will move forward in the new direction.

- 3. If the command is preceded by the caution At the Halt, each man will halt and take up his dressing on reaching the new alignment.
- 4. Forming at any angle will be practised.

45. Marching as in file

1. From the halt.

Move to the Right (or Left) as in file. Right (or Left)
—Turn.

As in Sec. 28. The men will cover each other exactly. The head of the man immediately in front of each soldier, when he is correctly covered, will conceal the heads of all others in front of him.

Quick-March.

The whole will step off, without increasing or diminishing the distance from each other.

- i. This movement will also be practised on the move.
- ii. Should the squad be required to move in the original direction the command will be—The squad will advance. Left (or Right)—Turn.

2. Changing direction.

Change direction Right. Right-Wheel.

The leading man will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle, having a radius of four feet. The other men, in succession, will follow in his footsteps without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the time, but shortening the pace a little with the inner foot.

3. Rear Files-Cover.

If the squad is halted or ordered to mark time when only a part of the men have wheeled into the new direction, the men who have not yet wheeled will cover off on those who have, moving to their places by the shortest route.

4. Forming squad. (Plate II, Fig. 3.)

On the Left (or Right), Form-Squad.

The leading man will lead on two paces and mark time, the remainder will make a left (or right) incline and move up into line with him, marking time as they come into line.

For-ward.

The squad will move on in line in the direction in which it was originally marching in file.
When squad is formed on the right, the left will

normally be ordered to direct.

If the order is:—

At the Halt, on the Left (or Right), Form-Squad.

The leading man will lead on two paces and halt, the remainder will make a left (or right) incline and form upon him, halting and dressing as they come into line.

SOUAD DRILL IN TWO RANKS

46. Formation of a squad in two ranks

The squad will now be formed for drill in two ranks. The men will take their places in succession, commencing from the right unless they are ordered to form on the other flank, each occupying a lateral space of 24 inches. Each man of the rear rank will be placed 60 inches from the man in front of him, measuring from heel to heel, and will cover him correctly, the two men thus placed forming a file. When the squad consists of an uneven number of men the third man from the left of the front rank will be a blank (or incomplete) file: that is, he will have no rear rank man.

47. Dressing

1. For ceremonial purposes men will be taught to dress on the word of command Right (or Left)—Dress. Both ranks will act as in Sec. 38, 1; in addition, the rear rank will correctly cover the front rank.

2. Normally, however, in squad drill, each man will take up his dressing without further word of command on completion of the movement, both ranks acting as in Sec. 38, 2, and the rear rank correctly covering the front rank.

48. Numbering a squad

Squad—Number.

The men of the front rank will number off smartly as in Sec. 39. Each rear rank man will have the same number as his front rank man.

49. Opening and closing a squad

1. Open Ranks-March.

The odd numbers of the front rank will step forward two paces, the even numbers of the rear rank will step back two paces. Ranks will dress as in Sec. 38, 2.

2. Reform Ranks-March.

The odd numbers of the front rank will step back two paces, the even numbers of the rear rank will step forward two paces, and each man will correct his dressing without further word of command as in Sec. 38, 2.

50. Marching in line

 The Squad will Advance. By the Right (or Left), Quick—March. Or The Squad will Advance. By the Right (or Left), Double—March.

The whole will step off, the front rank man of the file on the named flank taking points to march on. The men of each rank, except the directing file, will glance occasionally to the named flank to maintain their dressing. The men of the rear rank will also preserve their covering and distance from the front rank.

If there is a blank file, he will always be with the leading rank; when the squad is turned about on the march he will mark time two paces on the word about, thus gaining his position in the new leading rank before the turn is completed; if the squad is turned about at the halt, blank files and guides will stand fast on the caution about and turn on the command turn, then take two paces forward and align themselves with the new front rank.

2. When a squad is turned about the ranks are thereby changed, and the former rear rank becomes the front rank; the former front rank the rear rank.

When, however, the squad is required to fall back for a short distance only before resuming the original direction, ranks will not be changed. In this case the command will be The squad will retire, About—Turn; and on completion The squad will advance, About—Turn.

3. The diagonal march.

Diagonal march. Right In-cline.

As in para. I above. The men of the rear rank will preserve their relative positions with the men of the front rank, in order that they may cover correctly when they are again turned into line.

Should the squad be required to move in the original direction, the command will be: The squad will advance, Left In-cline.

4. Changing direction.

Change direction Right (or Left). Right (or Left)—Form.

The right-hand man of the front rank will make a full turn in the required direction, and the remainder of the front rank a right (or left) incline. The rear rank will stand fast.

Quick-March.

The right-hand man of the front rank will move forward two paces and mark time; the remainder will step off, the men of the rear rank conforming to the movements of their front rank men. The whole will mark time when they come into their places in the new alignment.

For-ward.

The whole will move forward in the new direction.

i. If the command is At the halt, Right—Form, the right-hand man will make a full turn to the right. On the command Quick—March he will advance two paces and halt, and the remainder will halt and dress as they come up in line with him.

ii. Squads may be formed half (or quarter) right (or left) on the command Half (or Quarter) Right (or

Left)-Form.

51. Marching in file

1. Turning into file.

Move to the Right (or Left) in File. Right (or Left)—Turn.

The whole will turn to the right (or left) and lead on in that direction without checking the pace. The men of the rear rank will dress by their front rank men. 2. Changing direction.

Change direction Right (or Left). Right (or Left)—Wheel.

The inner man of the leading file will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle having a radius of four feet, stepping short to enable the outer man of the file to wheel with him. When the quarter circle is completed, the file leads on in the new direction. The other files in succession will follow in the footsteps of the leading file without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the time.

If the squad is halted, or ordered to mark time, when only a part of it has wheeled into the new direction, the remainder will cover off as directed in Sec. 45, 3, on the

command Rear Files-Cover.

3. Forming squad.

On the Left (or Right), Form-Squad.

The left-hand man of the leading file, if the formation is on the left (or right-hand man of the leading file, if the formation is on the right), will lead on two paces and mark time. The remainder will incline in the named direction, and move up in line with him, marking time as they come into alignment.

For-ward.

The squad will move on in line in the direction in which it was originally marching in file.

- i. After forming squad on the right, the left will normally be ordered to direct.
- ii. If the command is At the Halt. On the Left (or Right), Form—Squad, the left- (or right-) hand man

of the leading file will lead on two paces and halt. The remainder will incline in the named direction and move up, halting and dressing as they reach their places on the new alignment.

iii. The squad may be formed obliquely to the line of march by the command Half (Quarter or Three-quarter) Left (or Right). Form—Squad.

4. Forming single file.

Advance in Single File from the Right. Quick-March.

The file on the right will at once move off, the remaining files marking time until the file on their right is clear, when they will follow on; inclining and covering off the files in front.

- i. If the squad is marching in file, the command will be Form Single—File. The front rank man of the leading file will then lead on, the remainder marking time to get into their places, and following on as described above.
- ii. A squad may similarly advance in single file from fours.

5. Forming two-deep.

Form-Two-Deep.

The leading man will mark time, the remainder of the squad will regain their positions in file, marking time as they reach their places.

For-ward.

The squad will move forward in file.

52. Forming fours. (Plate III.)

1. To form fours.

Form-Fours.

The even numbers will take a pace of 30 inches back with the left foot, and then a side pace of 24 inches with the right, so as to cover their odd numbers. In this formation the squad will stand in fours.

- . i. Great attention must be paid to training men when marching in fours, to keep the prescribed distance from and to cover exactly the man in front. Odd numbers are right files and even numbers are left files.
- ii. In order that the left section of fours may always be complete, the file on the left of a squad or section will act as the left file and the second file from the left as a right file in forming fours.
- iii. In the case of an odd file or a blank even file, as in Figs. 1 and 3, the rear rank man of the third or fourth file respectively from the left flank, will take a pace of 30 inches directly to the rear, in order to be in line with the rear rank men of its left files.

In the case of a blank odd file (Fig. 2) that file will march on the directing flank when in fours.

2. To form two-deep.

Form-Two-deep.

The left files will move to their original position in line by taking a side pace of 24 inches with the left foot and a pace forward of 30 inches with the right; or if the squad has been turned about while in fours, a side pace with the right foot and a pace back with the left. i. In forming fours with the rear rank in front, left files will take a pace of 30 inches to their front with the right foot, and one of 24 inches to the left with the left, thus bringing them into the same relative position as regards right files as they occupy after forming fours in the usual way.

They will form two-deep by taking a side pace with

the right foot and a pace back with the left.

ii. In the case of an odd file or a blank even file (Figs. 1 and 3) the rear rank man will take a pace directly to his front.

iii. A blank odd file (Fig. 2) will take a pace forward when fours are formed with the rear rank in front.

They form two-deep by taking a pace back with the left foot.

3. To the right or left.

Move to the Right (or Left) in Fours. Form Fours. As above.

Right (or Left).

Each man of the squad will turn in the named direction. Except during the elementary training of recruits, the command Form Fours—Right (or Left) will, in cases where no other caution is indicated in this manual, be preceded by the caution Move to the Right (or Left) in Fours, whether the troops are halted or on the march.

4. To re-form line.

Left (or Right)-Turn.

Each man of the squad will turn in the direction named, and then form two-deep, as described above.

If it is required to remain in fours, the word of command will be In Fours, Left (or Right)—Turn.

5. When on the march in line.

Move to the Right (or Left) in Fours, Form Fours— Right (or Left).

As in paras. 3 and 4, but the right files will mark time two paces, while the left files are moving to their places.

Should the command Right (or Left) In—cline be given, when a squad is marching in fours, the squad will incline instead of turning in the required direction.

When inclining the squad will remain in fours.

6. When in file at the halt.

Form-Fours.

Right of the squad leading.

The left files will take a pace to the right with the right foot and a pace forward with the left foot, thus bringing them on the right of the right files.

Left of the squad leading.

The left files take a pace to the left with the left foot, and a pace to the rear with the right foot, thus bringing them on the left of the right files.

Form-Two-deep.

Right of the squad leading.

The left files will take a pace to the rear with the right foot and a pace to the left with the left foot, thus bringing them in rear of the right files.

Left of the squad leading,

The left files take a pace forward with the left foot, and a pace to the right with the right foot, thus bringing them to the front of the right files.

7. When in file on the march.

Form-Fours.

The same motions as when halted, except that the right files mark time two paces in each case so as to allow the left files to move to their places.

Form-Two-deep.

The same motions as at the halt, the right files again marking time two paces to allow the left files to move to their places.

8. A test of good marching in fours is the position of the men when they are turned into line. If there are no gaps or irregularities in the line and the squad occupies the same frontage as before it formed fours, the marching is good. This test should be applied during the instruction of recruits, and the slightest carelessness as regards the maintenance of exact distances should be checked.

53. Movements in fours

1. Changing direction.

Change direction Right. Right-Wheel.

The inner man of the leading four will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle having a radius of four feet, stepping short to enable the other men of the four to wheel with him. When the quarter circle is completed the four leads on in the new direction. The other fours in succession will follow in the footsteps of the leading four without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the time.

2. Rear Fours-Cover.

If the squad is halted or ordered to mark time before the whole squad has wheeled into the new direction, the fours which have not yet wheeled will cover off on those which have, moving to their places by the shortest route.

3. Forming squad when moving to the right.

On the Left. Form-Squad.

Each man will complete the pace with the left foot. The right files will mark time two paces, the left files will take a pace to the rear with the right foot and one to the left with the left foot, and the whole of the squad, except the right-hand man of the front rank, who will lead forward two paces and then mark time, will make a half-left turn together and move up to their places in line, each man marking time when he reaches his position in line.

For-ward.

The squad will move on in line in the direction in

which it was originally marching in fours.

When a squad moving to the right in fours forms squad on the right, the right files mark time three paces; the left files take a pace to the rear with the right foot and one to the left with the left foot, mark time one pace, and the whole make a half-right turn together and move up.

4. Forming squad when moving to the left.

On the Right. Form—Squad.

Each man will complete the pace with the right foot. The right files will mark time two paces, the left files will take a pace to the front with the left foot and one to the

right with the right foot, and the whole except the lefthand man of the front rank, who will lead forward two paces and then mark time, will make a half-right turn together and move up to their places in line, each man marking time when he reaches his position in line.

For-ward.

As in para. 3, above.

- i. When a squad moving to the left in fours forms squad on the left, the right files mark time three paces, the left files take a pace to the front with the left foot and one to the right with the right foot, mark time one pace, and the whole make a half-left turn together.
- ii. When the command On the Right (or Left), Form—Squad is preceded by the caution At the Halt, each man will halt when he reaches his position in line, instead of marking time.

54. Drill with the cane or pace stick

1. Position of cane at attention.

The cane will be held firmly in the right hand, in a perpendicular position close to the right side of the body, first joint of the forefinger of the right hand underneath knob of cane and pointing towards the thigh, thumb across the front of the cane, the remaining three fingers grasping the cane.

2. Position of cane when standing at ease.

The back of the right hand in palm of the left. Cane to be between the right arm and the body, ferrule pointing obliquely upwards and to the right front.

3. Position of the cane on the march.

On the command Quick—March, step off as described in Sec. 31. As the left foot comes to the ground the first time bring both hands smartly to the centre of the cane (one movement), cane to be kept perpendicular in the right side. As the left foot comes to the ground the second time, cut the left hand to the side, and carry the cane to the right side, cane to be carried parallel to the ground, balanced between the thumb and the first two fingers, ferrule to the front. The arms to be swung as in marching without canes, but the cane must be kept parallel to the ground.

The cane is now at the trail.

4. Halting.

On receiving the command *Halt*, canes will be kept at the trail. After a slight pause, canes will be brought to the position of attention in two movements, viz.:—

- i. Seize the cane with the left hand at the centre and bring to a perpendicular position in right side, at the same time move the right hand to the knob of cane as in position of attention.
- ii. Cut the left hand smartly away to the left side.

5. Turning about.

When halted.—Cane is kept in position of attention.

On the march.—On the first movement of the turn (left foot) the cane will be brought to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, upper part of the arm close to the side, forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt. On the first pace (right foot)

after the completion of turn, the cane will be brought to the trail.

Saluting with the cane is dealt with in Chapter V.

55. Dismissing with or without arms

1. Squad. Dis-miss.

The squad will turn to the right, salute, and, after a pause equal to four paces in quick time, break off quietly and leave the parade ground in quick time.

- i. If the squad is under arms, arms will be sloped before the squad is dismissed (Rifle regiments will shoulder arms). But on wet days, to avoid damaging the uniform with wet rifles, troops will be dismissed at the order.
- ii. If no officer is on parade the men will not salute before they break off.

2. Dismissing with the cane.

If an officer is on parade; on the command Dis—miss, the squad will turn to the right, place the cane under the left arm, ferrule to the rear, cut the right hand to the side, salute to the front, and break off in quick time. Movements will be carried out at the same pace as in quick time, the hand being cut away to the side on the sixth pace.

If no officer is on parade, the squad will, on the command Dis—miss, turn to the right, keeping the cane

in position of attention.

SQUAD DRILL WITH ARMS

RIFLE EXERCISES

56. General rules

- 1. Squad drill with arms will be combined with instruction in:—
 - Care of arms, including names of the principal parts of the rifle.
 - ii. Aiming and firing.
 - iii. Bayonet training.
- 2. It is important that the above instruction should commence from the time the recruit is issued with his rifle, in order to avoid faulty methods in the early stages.
- 3. Squad drill with arms should be practised occasionally when men are some distance away from each other, in order to accustom them to handle their arms correctly and steadily when separated from their comrades,
- 4. Squad drill with arms should include instruction in the duties of guards, and paying compliments (Chapter XIII).
- 5. The following instructions apply to the Rifle, magazine, short, Lee-Enfield (S.M.L.E.), Lee-Enfield, Enfield 1914, and Lee-Metford rifle. A special note is made when the instructions for the short Lee-Enfield rifle do not apply to the Lee-Enfield, Enfield 1914, or Lee-Metford rifle.
- 6. When rifle exercises are performed judging the time, when halted, the motions will be carried out at the rate of 60 to the minute. When performed judging the time, on

the march, each motion will be carried out as the left foot meets the ground.

7. Squads drilling with rifles will be practised in the different marches and variations of step described in the foregoing sections.

The disengaged arm will be allowed to swing naturally

as described in Secs. 31 and 34.

8. During the handling of the rifle and throughout every movement of it, the head must be kept perfectly still, except where expressly stated otherwise.

57. Falling in with arms at the order (Plate IV)

The recruit will fall in as described in Sec. 37, with the rifle held perpendicularly at his right side, the butt on the ground, its toe in line with the toe of the right boot. The right arm to be slightly bent, the hand to hold the rifle at or near the band (with the Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, near the lower band), back of the hand to the right, thumb against the thigh, fingers together and slanting towards the ground, elbow to the rear.

When each man has taken up his dressing he will stand at ease.

58. To stand at ease and stand easy from the order

1. Stand at-Ease.

Keeping the legs straight, carry the left foot about 12 inches to the left so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. At the same time push the muzzle of the rifle smartly forward with the right hand,

the right arm straight, and close to the side, without allowing the right shoulder to drop, toe of the butt remaining in line with the toe of the right boot, the left arm to be kept in the position of attention.

2. Stand—Easy.

On the command Stand—Easy, the right hand will be slid up the rifle to the piling swivel and the men will act as in Sec. 26.

- 3. On the caution Squad, etc., the right hand will be slid down to the band, and the position of stand at ease assumed.
- 4. The above procedure is the same with or without bayonets fixed.

59. The attention from stand at ease

Squad-Attention.

The left foot will be brought smartly up to the right and the rifle returned to the order.

60. The slope from the order

Slope Arms-One.

Throw the rifle upwards with the right hand, catching it with both hands at the same time, left hand at the back sight (Enfield 1914, below the dial sight), the right hand at the small of the butt, thumb to the left, elbow to the rear, right arm nearly straight, rifle kept perpendicular, close into the right side, shoulders to be kept square.

Two.

Carry the rifle across the body, and place it flat on the left shoulder, magazine outwards from the body. As the rifle comes on the shoulder seize the butt with the left hand, the first two joints of the fingers grasping the upper side of the butt, the thumb about one inch above the toe, left elbow close to the side, forearm horizontal, and the heel of the butt in line with the centre of the left thigh.

Three. (Plate V.)

Cut away the right hand to the position of attention. Rifle to be kept perfectly still.

61. The order from the slope

Order Arms-One.

Bring the rifle down to the full extent of the left arm, at the same time meeting it with the right hand between the back sight and the band (at the lower band, Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield and Lee-Metford rifle), arm close to the body. Butt not to be drawn to the rear.

Two.

Bring the rifle to the right side, steadying it at the time with the left hand at the nose cap (at the upper band, Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield and Lee-Metford rifle), but just clear of the ground.

Three.

Place the butt quietly on the ground, cutting the left hand away to the side.

62. The present from the slope

Present Arms-One.

Grasp the rifle with the right hand at the small, forearm close to the body.

Two.

Raise the rifle with the right hand perpendicularly in front of the centre of the body, guard to the left; at the same time place the left hand smartly on the stock, wrist on the magazine, fingers pointing upwards, thumb close to the forefinger, point of the thumb in line with the mouth; the left elbow to be close to the butt, the right elbow and butt close to the body.

Three. (Plate VI.)

Quitting the rifle with the left hand bring the rifle down perpendicularly in front of and about three inches from the centre of the body, turning the magazine to the front, holding at the full extent of the right arm, fingers together slanting downwards, and meet it smartly with the left hand immediately behind the back sight, outside the sling (Enfield 1914, just below the dial sight, thumb in line with the bead and pointing towards the muzzle), thumb pointing towards the muzzle; at the same time place the hollow of the right foot against the left heel, both knees straight. The weight of the rifle to be supported by the left hand.

63. The slope from the present

Slope Arms-One.

Bring the right foot up in line with the left and at the same time place the rifle on the left shoulder as described in the second motion of the *slope* from the *order*.

Two.

Cut away the right hand to the side; rifle to be kept still.

64. The present from the order (for Rifle regiments only) Present Arms—One.

Throw the rifle upwards with the right hand, catching it with the left hand at the point of balance; thumb of the left hand in the hollow of the right shoulder, and the right hand at the small of the butt, thumb to the left, elbow to the rear.

Two.

Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the centre of the body, turning the guard to the left; at the same time place the left hand smartly on the stock, wrist on the magazine, fingers pointing upwards, thumb close to the forefinger, point of the thumb in line with the mouth; left elbow close to the butt, right elbow and butt close to the body.

Three.

As in the third motion of the present from the slope.

65. The order from the present (for Rifle regiments only) Order Arms—One.

Carry the rifle to the right side and seize it with the right hand at the band (with Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, at the lower band), and with the left hand round the nose-cap (with Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, below the upper band), butt just clear of the ground; at the same time bring the right foot smartly up to the left,

Two.

Place the butt quietly on the ground as at the order, cutting the left hand away to the side.

66. Fixing bayonets from the order

Fix.

The right-hand man will take three paces forward at the short trail.

In the case of a company or battalion in line the number of paces taken by the right-hand man will be seven.

Bayonets-One.

Seize the handle of the bayonet with the left hand, back of the hand to the front, thumb and fingers to the rear; at the same time push the muzzle of the rifle sharply forward; front rank men turning the head and eyes to the right, looking straight at the right-hand man who will look to the left.

Two. (Plate VII.)

Taking the time from the right-hand man, draw the bayonet, turning the point upwards and keeping the elbow down. Place the handle on the bayonet standard, with the ring over the stud on the nose-cap (with the Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, over the muzzle), pressing it home to the catch. The left hand should be placed as shown in the illustration. Body and head to be erect. After pressing his bayonet to the catch, the right-hand man will raise his disengaged arm to the full extent upwards at an angle of 135 degrees.

Three.

Taking the time from the right-hand man bring the rifle to the order; at the same time cut away the left hand to the side, front rank turning the head and eyes to the front.

The right-hand man will then take three paces to the rear, at the short trail, and align himself with the front rank.

In the case of a company or battalion in line the righthand man will turn about and, at the short trail, resume his original position, instead of stepping back the seven paces.

- i. In the above motions the front rank time their movements by the right-hand man and the rear rank will take their time from the front rank.
- ii. Rifle regiments use the word swords instead of bayonets.

67. Unfixing bayonets from the order

Unfix.

The left-hand man will take three paces forward at the short trail.

In the case of a company or battalion in line the number of paces taken by the left-hand man will be seven.

Bayonets-One. (Plate VIII.)

Keeping the heels closed, place the rifle between and grip it with the knees, guard to the front. At the same time seize the rifle with the left hand, knuckles to the front, thumb on the bayonet bolt spring; the right hand to be kept on the rifle.

Two.

Seize the bayonet handle smartly with the right hand, knuckles to the front; draw the rifle towards the body with the knees and press the spring with the left thumb. Raise the bayonet about one inch and at the same time the front rank men, turning the head and eyes to the left, will look straight at the left-hand man. Rear rank looking to the front. The left-hand man raising his right arm straight and upwards at an angle of 135 degrees, at the same time turning his head and eyes to the right.

Three.

Taking the time from the left-hand man, drop the point to the left side, ring to the rear, returning the bayonet half-way into the scabbard, keeping the forearm square with the body (the left-hand man forcing his bayonet home), at the same time seize the scabbard with the left hand, thumb underneath the frog, guiding the bayonet into the scabbard with the forefinger of the left hand.

Four.

The left-hand man will raise his right hand smartly as in **Two**, and on this signal remainder will force the bayonet home.

Five.

Taking the time from the left-hand man seize the rifle with the right hand at the band (Lee-Enfield and Lee-Metford rifles at the lower band), retaining hold of the scabbard with the left hand.

Six.

Taking the time from left-hand man return to the order and at the same time cutting the left hand to the side, front rank turning the head and eyes to the front.

The left-hand man will then take three paces to the rear, at the short trail, and align himself with the front

rank.

In the case of a company or battalion in line the lefthand man will turn about and, at the short trail, resume his original position, instead of stepping back the seven paces.

In the above motions the front rank time their movements by the left-hand man and the rear rank will

take their time from the front rank,

68. Inspection of arms

- 1. A squad, parading in two ranks, will be opened and closed as in Sec. 22, 1.
 - 2. Inspection of arms from the order.

For Inspection, Port-Arms.

Throw the rifle, muzzle leading, with the right hand smartly across the body, magazine to the left and downwards, the barrel crossing opposite the point of the left shoulder, and meet it at the same time with the left hand close behind the backsight, thumb and fingers round the rifle, the left wrist to be opposite the left breast, both elbows close to the body.

Turn the safety catch completely over to the front with the thumb of the right hand (with Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, lower the safety catch with the thumb of the right hand). Pull out the cut-off, first pressing it downwards, with the thumb, then seize the knob with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand, and, taking the time from the right-hand man, turn it sharply upwards, and draw back the bolt to its full extent; then seize the butt with the right hand immediately behind the bolt, thumb pointing to the muzzle. [Enfield 1914. Turn the safety catch completely over to the front with the thumb of the right hand, seize the knob with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand, turn it sharply upwards and draw back the bolt to its full extent, then seize the butt with the right hand immediately behind the bolt, thumb pointing to the muzzle.]

3. Inspection of arms from the slope.

For Inspection, Port Arms-One.

Seize the rifle with the right hand at the small of the butt.

Two

Bring the rifle down to the *port*, meeting the rifle with the left hand close behind the back sight; then proceed as in paragraph 2, above.

4. To ease springs, or charge magazines and come to the order.

Ease-Springs.

From the position described above, work the bolt rapidly backwards and forwards until all cartridges are removed from the magazine and chamber * allowing them to fall to the ground, then close the *cut-off* (except with S.M.L.E. Mark III* rifles which have no cut-off)

^{*} This precaution will also be adopted when magazines are not charged, and at drill it should be presumed that five rounds are in the magazine and chamber.

by placing the right hand over the bolt and pressing the cut-off inwards, then close the breech, press the trigger, turn the safety oatch over to the rear with the first finger of the right hand, and return the hand to the small. [Enfield 1914. From the position described above, draw back the left hand, place the fingers on the magazine platform, depress the rear end of it, engage the bolt over it by moving the bolt slightly forward with the right hand, return the left hand to the point of balance, close the bolt, press the trigger, apply the safety catch with the thumb of the right hand, and return the hand to the small of the butt.]

Charge-Magazines.

The magazine will hold two charges of five cartridges each, but should, in ordinary circumstances, be loaded with one only. If it is desired to charge the magazine without loading the rifle, the top cartridge may be pressed downward with the thumb and the cut-off closed.

The breech will then be closed, trigger pressed and the

safety catch applied.

When using a rifle which is not fitted with a cut-off and it is required to charge magazines, keep the pressure on the top cartridges with the thumb of the right hand and draw the bolt head over it with the little finger, close the breech, press the trigger and apply the safety catch.

5. To order arms from the port.

Order Arms-One.

Holding the rifle firmly in the left hand, seize it with the right hand at the band (with Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, at the lower band).

Two.

As in the second motion of the order from the slope.

Three.

As in the third motion of the order from the slope.

6. To slope arms from the port.

Slope Arms-One.

Place the rifle on the left-shoulder as described in the second motion of the slope from the order. (Sec. 60).

Two.

As in the third motion of the slope from the order.

69. Instructions for inspecting arms

- 1. When arms are inspected at the *port* only, as in inspecting a platoon on parade, the officer, warrant officer, or N.C.O. will see that the exterior of the rifle is clean and free from rust; that the magazine and action are clean and in good order; that the sights are at zero; and that no parts are loose or damaged. He will here and there examine the bore of a rifle to see that it has been cleaned and is free from obstructions.
- 2. Each soldier, when the officer, warrant officer or N.C.O. has passed the file next to him, will, without further word of command, ease springs, order arms and stand at ease.

70. To examine arms

Examine-Arms.

Both ranks, being at the port, will come to the position for loading (see Small Arms Training, Vol. I, 1931, Sec. 30) with the muzzle so inclined as to enable the

officer, warrant officer or N.C.O. to look through the barrel, the thumbnail of the right hand being placed in front of the bolt to reflect light into the barrel.

The soldier, when the officer, warrant officer or N.C.O. has passed the next file to him, will act as detailed in

Sec. 69, 2.

i. If it is necessary to examine arms, the men, when in the position of for inspection, port arms, will be cautioned to remain at the port. Ranks will be closed, as in Sec. 22, 1, when the examination has been completed.

ii. In ordering arms from the examine, the first motion is to seize the rifle with the right hand between the back sight and the band (Enfield 1914, below the lower band), at the same time bringing the left foot back to the right. With the second motion the rifle will be brought to the right side, the left hand steadying the rifle, as in the second motion of the order from the slope. The third motion is the same as the third motion of the order from the slope.

71. The trail from the order (Plate IX)

The trail is not to be used in close order drill except by

Rifle and English light infantry regiments.

It will be used, however, in the field when the men are advancing in section groups or other similar formation and when they extend.

Trail-Arms. .

By a slight bend of the right arm give the rifle a cant forward and seize it at the point of balance, bringing it at once to a horizontal position at the side at the full extent of the right arm, which should hand easily from the shoulder, fingers and thumb round the rifle.

72. The order from the trail

Order-Arms.

Raise the muzzle, catch the rifle at the band (with Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle at the lower band) and come to the *order*.

73. The trail from the slope

Trail Arms-One.

Keeping the rifle in the position of the slope, seize it at the point of balance with the right hand.

Two.

With the right hand bring the rifle to a horizontal position at the right side (as in Sec. 71) at the same time cutting the left hand to the side.

74. The slope from the trail

Slope Arms-One.

With the right hand place the rifle on the left shoulder in the position of the *slope*, at the same time seizing the butt with the left hand as in the second motion of the *slope* from the *order* (Sec. 69).

Two.

Cut away the right hand to the side.

75. The shoulder from the order (for Rifle and English Light Infantry regiments only)

Rifle and English Light Infantry regiments march at the shoulder when moving in file, the men shouldering their arms on the command Quick—March, or, if already on the move, on the command which brings them into file.

Shoulder Arms-One.

Throw the rifle upwards with the right hand, catching it with the left hand in line with the elbow; at the same time slipping the second finger of the right hand inside the guard, close the first and second fingers on the magazine, thumb and remaining fingers pointing downwards; the upper part of the barrel to rest in the hollow of the shoulder. (With Enfield 1914 rifle—Give the rifle a cant upwards with the right hand, catching it with the left hand in line with the elbow, at the same time slipping the first finger of the right hand inside the guard, second finger under the rear of the guard, thumb and remaining fingers pointing downwards; the upper part of the barrel to rest in the hollow of the shoulder.)

Two.

Cut the left hand to the side.

76. The order from the shoulder (for Rifle and English Light Infantry regiments only)

Order Arms-One.

Relax the grasp of the right hand and allow the rifle to drop till the butt is within two inches of the ground. At the same time seize the rifle with the left hand at the nose cap (Enfield 1914, upper band), and with the right at the band (Enfield 1914, lower band).

Two.

Place the butt quietly on the ground as at the order, cutting the left hand to the side.

77. The shoulder from the trail (for Rifle and English Light Infantry regiments only)

Shoulder Arms-One.

Tightening the grasp of the right hand, bring the rifle to a perpendicular position, and hold it with the left hand in line with the elbow, then seize it with the right hand as at the *shoulder*.

Two.

Cut away the left hand to the side.

78. The trail from the shoulder (for Rifle and English Light Infantry regiments only)

Trail Arms-One.

Seize the rifle with the left hand in line with the elbow, arm close to the body.

Two.

Grasp the rifle with the right hand at the point of balance, then bring it down to the *trail*, at the same time cutting the left hand to the side.

79. To change arms when at the slope

Change Arms-One.

Seize the butt of the rifle with the right hand, back of the hand up, at the same time slipping the left hand up to the small.

Two.

Carry the rifle, turning the magazine outwards, on to the right shoulder, bringing it well to the front, so as to clear the head.

Three.

Cut the left hand to the side.

To change arms from the right to the left shoulder act as above, reading *left* for *right*, and *right* for *left*.

80. To change arms when at the trail

Change Arms-One.

Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, magazine to the front, upper part of the arm close to the side, forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt.

Two.

Pass the rifle across the front of the body, catching it with the left hand at the point of balance, at the same time cutting the right hand smartly to the side. In this position the rifle is to be held perpendicularly and opposite the left shoulder, magazine to the front, upper part of the left arm close to the side, left forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt.

Three.

Lower the rifle to the full extent of the left arm at the trail.

To change arms from the left to the right act as above, reading left for right and right for left.

81. The short trail

No word of command.

Raise the rifle about three inches from the ground, keeping otherwise in the position of the order.

- If standing with ordered arms, and directed to form

fours, to close to the right or left, to step back, or to take any named number of paces, men will come to the short trail.

82. Fixing and unfixing bayonets on the march

1. Fixing bayonets.

Fix-Bayonets.

i. When at the *slope* seize the rifle with the right handat the point of balance and bring it to the trail, with the muzzle sloping upwards in front of the right breast. Draw and fix the bayonet with the left hand. Bring the rifle to the *slope*.

ii. When at the trail raise the muzzle of the rifle and proceed as above described taking the time from the

right-hand man.

2. Unfixing bayonets.

Unfix-Bayonets.

i. When at the slope seize the rifle with the right hand at the point of balance as in fixing, throw the rifle under the right arm-pit; unfix the bayonet and return it to the scabbard; bring the rifle to the trail muzzle sloping upwards. Taking the time from the right-hand man of the squad, bring the rifle to the slope.

ii. When at the trail raise the muzzle and proceed as

above described and return the rifle to the trail.

83. The secure from the slope

Secure Arms-One.

Bring the rifle down to the full extent of the left arm at the same time meeting it with the right hand between the back sight and band (or the lower band Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle), arms close to the body.

Two.

Turn the magazine to the front, seizing the rifle with the left hand at the hand-guard, keeping the rifle close to the body.

Three. (Plate X.)

Give the butt a sharp cant to the rear, place the breech under the left arm-pit, knob of the bolt to the rear, muzzle inclined slightly to the right and downwards, at the same time cut away the right hand to the side.

84. The slope from the secure

Slope Arms-One.

Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position opposite the left shoulder, guard to the front, at the same time meeting it at the small of the butt with the right hand.

Two.

Carry the rifle on to the left shoulder, turning the magazine outwards, seizing the butt with the left hand as in the second motion of the slope from the order (Sec. 60).

Three.

Cut away the right hand to the side.

85. The secure from the order

Secure Arms-One.

Give the rifle a cant upwards with the right hand and seize it at the point of balance, bringing it to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, magazine to the front, upper part of the arm close to the side, forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt.

Two.

Pass the rifle across the front of the body, catch it with the left hand at the point of balance, at the same time cutting the right hand smartly away to the side.

Three. (Plate X.)

Keeping the grip of the left at the point of balance, bring the breech up under the arm-pit by lowering the left forearm, the muzzle of the rifle slanting slightly off to the right and downwards.

86. The order from the secure

Order Arms-One.

Seize the rifle with the right hand at the band.

Two.

Bring the rifle across the body to the second position of the order from the slope.

Three.

Place the butt quietly on the ground, at the same time cutting the left hand smartly away to the side.

87. The secure from the trail and vice versa

1. Secure Arms—One.

Keeping the grip of the right hand at the point of balance, bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, as in the first position of the secure from the order (see Sec. 85).

Two.

As in the second motion of the secure from the order (Sec. 85).

Three. (Plate X.)

As in the third motion of the secure from the order (Sec. 85).

The rifle can be brought to the secure from the trail at the left side on the command Secure—Arms, by bending the left arm and bringing the breech up under the left arm-pit.

2. Trail Arms-One.

As in the first motion of the change from the secure (see Sec. 88).

Two.

As in the second motion of the change from the secure (Sec. 88).

Three.

Lower the rifle to the full extent of the right arm at the trail.

From the secure under the right arm, the rifle will be brought to the trail as in "Three," above, on the command Trail—Arms.

88. To change arms when at the secure

Change Arms—One.

Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the left shoulder, magazine to the front, upper part of the arm close to the side, forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt.

Two.

Pass the rifle across the front of the body, catching it with the right hand at the point of balance, at the same time cutting the left hand smartly to the side. In this position the rifle is to be held perpendicular and opposite the right shoulder, magazine to the front, upper part of the right arm close to the side, right forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt.

Three.

By bending the right arm, bring the breech up under the right arm-pit, muzzle slanting downwards.

Note.—To change arms from the right to the left act as above, reading right for left and left for right.

89. To sling arms

1. With unfixed bayonets.

Sling-Arms.

The sling of the rifle having been loosened to the full extent, the soldier will pass his head and right arm between the sling and rifle, muzzle upwards, rifle hanging diagonally across the back.

2. With fixed bayonets.

Sling-Arms.

The sling of the rifle having been loosened sufficiently, the rifle will be slung by passing the sling over the right or left shoulder, with the rifle hanging in a perpendicular position behind the shoulder.

The rifle is carried slung by dismounted signallers,

brakesmen and drivers leading pack animals.

90. The on-guard from the slope and vice versa (See Sec. 173.)

1. On-Guard-One.

Seize the rifle with the right hand smartly at the small.

Two.

Bring the rifle down in front of the body, bayonet pointing to the front and slightly upwards, grasping it with the right hand at the small of the butt (which should be just in front of the right thigh), and with the left hand holding the rifle in the most convenient position in front of the back sight so that the left arm is only slightly bent. At the same time take a full walking pace forward with the left foot; left knee slightly bent.

2. Slope Arms-One.

Place the rifle on the left shoulder, seizing the butt with the left hand as for the *slope*, at the same time bring the left foot back to the right and turn to the front.

Two.

Cut away the right hand to the side.

91. The on-guard from the order and vice versa

1. On-Guard.

Throw the rifle up with the right hand and come smartly to the *on-guard* position as described in Sec. 90, "Two."

2. Order Arms-One.

Seize the rifle with the right hand at the band and come to the order, at the same time bring the left foot

back to the right and turn to the front, steadying the rifle with the left hand.

Two.

Cut away the left hand to the side.

92. The support from the shoulder, and vice versa (for Rifle regiments only)

To support arms from the shoulder (for guard duties). Carry the rifle horizontally across the body, magazine to the front, rifle on the right forearm, right hand holding the rifle as at the shoulder.

The shoulder from the support is the converse of the above.

93. The high-port from the on-guard and vice versa

1. High-Port.

Keeping the grasp of the rifle as in the on-guard position, bring the rifle to a diagonal position across the front of the body. The muzzle pointing upwards, magazine to the front and butt sufficiently advanced to enable it to be brought instantly to the shoulder to fire.

2. On-Guard.

Return to the on-guard position.

94. To ground arms and take up arms, from and to the order

1. Ground Arms—One.

Bend down and place the rifle gently on the ground at the right side, magazine to the right, muzzle pointing straight to the front. The right hand will be in line with the toe as it places the rifle on the ground.

Two.

Return smartly to the position of attention.

2. Take up Arms-One.

Bend down and seize the rifle with the right hand in line with the right toe.

Two.

Pick up the rifle and return smartly to the order.

95. Piling and unpiling arms

1. Piling arms.

Pile Arms-One.

The front rank will turn about, placing the butts of their rifles between their feet. The odd numbers will turn the magazines of their rifles towards the right flank of the squad, the even numbers towards the left flank of the squad, at the same time the rear rank will take a pace forward, turning the magazines of their rifles to the rear.

Two.

The odd numbers of the front rank will seize the rifles of the even numbers with the left hand crossing the muzzles, magazines turned outwards, at the same time raising the piling swivels with the forefinger and thumb of both hands.

The even numbers of the front rank will resume the position of attention.

Three.

The even numbers of the rear rank will incline their muzzles to the front and place their rifles under their

right arms, guards uppermost, at the same time seizing the piling swivel with the forefinger and thumb of the left hand. They will then link swivels through the crossed muzzles of the front rank, lower the butts to the ground, placing them six inches to the right of and in line with their right toes.

Four.

The odd numbers of the rear rank, and supernumerary rank (if any), will place their rifles perpendicularly against the pile nearest to them and resume the position of attention.

Stand-Clear.

Ranks will step back one pace and turn to the right-flank of the squad, *i.e.* the front rank turns to the left and the rear rank to the right.

i. If ranks have been changed the squad, etc., will be

renumbered before arms are piled.

ii. In piling arms on parade the command Fall—Out will be given after Stand—Clear. On again falling in the men will place themselves as they stood before falling out.

2. Unbiling arms.

Stand-To.

Ranks will turn inwards and take a pace forward.

Unpile Arms—One.

The whole will seize their rifles at the band with the right hand.

Two.

The whole will incline their butts inwards until the swivels become unlinked, and return to the order, at the

same time the original left-hand man of the front rank will raise his disengaged arm to an angle of 135 degrees, the rear rank looking in his direction.

Three.

Taking the time from the original left-hand man of the front rank who will cut his hand to his side, the front rank will turn about and the rear rank will turn their head and eyes to the front and take a pace to the rear.

96. To recover from the slope

Recover Arms-One.

Seize the rifle with the right hand at the small of the butt.

Two.

Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the body, right hand at the small of the butt and in front of the mouth, left hand on butt plate, thumb one inch from heel, fingers round the side of the butt, barrel of the rifle to the front. (Plate XI.)

97. To slope from the recover

Slope Arms-One.

Carry the rifle to the left shoulder and seize it as for the slope.

Two.

Cut away the right hand to the side.

98. Porting and sloping arms by serjeants on the flanks of the escort to the colour

Present-Arms.

On the first motion of the *present* the serjeants will execute the first movement of the half or three-quarter turn outwards and seize the rifle at the small of the butt with the right hand. During the second motion of the *present* they will stand still. On the third motion of the *present* the serjeants complete the turn and bring the rifle to the *port*.

Slope—Arms.

On the first motion of the *slope* the serjeants will execute the first movement of the half or three-quarter turn inwards and place the rifle on the shoulder at the *slope*. On the second motion of the *slope* they will complete the turn and cut the right hand to the side.

CHAPTER V

SALUTING

99. General instructions

- 1. Instructors will impress upon recruits the importance of the salute. It is a military method of greeting a superior, not a servile act. It is an outward sign of the inward spirit of discipline and respect for superiors. The general tone and feeling in a regiment is indicated as much by the manner in which the men salute and the officers return the salute as by any other action.
- 2. Officers paying compliments by saluting with the hand will follow the instructions laid down for soldiers. They will receive and return a salute with the courtesy it deserves.
- 3. The salute will be given with the right hand. In cases where from physical incapacity a right-hand salute is impossible, the salute will be given with the left hand.
- 4. Instruction in saluting will form part of a recruit's training. He will receive instruction in saluting without arms as soon as his squad has learned to dress with intervals. (See Sec. 27.)

5. Officers will be saluted at all times, whether in uniform or plain clothes.

When two or more officers are together, the senior only, whether in uniform or not, will return salutes, but in case, such as groups of officers at conferences, or on other occasions, when salutes are likely to pass unnoticed by

the senior, another officer will be detailed to return them. This is especially necessary when men salute officers in a closed motor car.

- Officers or soldiers passing troops with uncased standards or colours will salute the standard or colours. Cased colours will not be saluted.
- 7. Officers, soldiers and colours passing a military funeral will salute the body.

8. Instructions for saluting when the National Anthem is played for a royal salute, or on other occasions, are laid down in King's Regulations, 1928, para. 889.

Commanders of parties will, if on the move, halt, call their men to attention and salute (officers with drawn swords coming to the *carry*) while the National Anthem is being played.

When in plain clothes all ranks will remove their head-

dress and stand at attention.

Sentries will slope arms.

9. The detail of sword exercises is given in Chapter XIV.

100. Saluting without arms

- 1. Saluting to the front.
 - i. By Numbers.

Salute by Numbers-One.

Bring the right hand smartly, with a circular motion, to the head, palm to the front, fingers extended and close together, point of the forefinger an inch above the right eye, or touching edge of peak of cap, as in illustration, thumb close to the forefinger; elbow in line, and nearly square with the shoulder. (See Plate XII.)

Two.

Cut away the arm smartly to the side by the shortest way.

ii. Judging the time.

Salute, Judging the Time-Salute.

Go through the motions as in para. I, i, above, making a pause equal to two paces in quick time between each motion.

2. Saluting to the side.

Saluting to the side when on the move is carried out as in para. I, on the command Salute, except that, as the hand is brought to the salute, the head will be turned smartly towards the officer or instructor saluted as the left foot comes to the ground. The principles of saluting with a cane (see para. 4, below) apply.

3. Saluting on the march.

On the command "Eyes—right (or left)" and "Eyes—front", squads will turn their head and eyes to the right (or left) and to the front, as the left foot comes to the ground, The same principle applies for a squad with arms.

4. Saluting when carrying a cane.

To the front (practice for delivering messages or addressing officers).

Salute to the Front-Salute.

The command Salute will be given as the right foot passes the left (as for Halt). The squad will halt, judge a pause equal to two paces in quick time, place cane smartly under left arm, ferrule to the rear, cut the right

hand smartly to the right side—salute, transfer written message to right hand and deliver it to (or address) the officer, salute again, turn about, keeping cane under left arm, and march off in quick time. As the left foot comes to the ground the first time seize the cane with the right hand as near the centre as possible, with the back of the hand uppermost, thumb underneath. On the left foot coming to the ground again bring the cane smartly to the *trail*.

5. On the move when carrying a cane.

Salute to the Right (or Left)—Salute.

The command Salute is given as the right foot is coming to the ground. As the left foot comes to the ground the first time after the word "Salute," place the cane smartly under the left arm, ferrule to the rear. Next time the left foot comes to the ground (third pace) cut the right hand smartly away to the side and commence the salute on the fifth pace, turning the head towards the officer saluted. On the tenth pace (right foot) cut the right hand smartly away to the side, turning the head to the front. On left foot coming to the ground (eleventh pace) seize the cane with the right hand as near the centre as possible, back of the hand uppermost, thumb underneath. On the left foot coming to the ground (thirteenth pace) bring the cane smartly to the right side at the trail. The left arm is not to be swung during the salute. All cane movements are carried out on the beat of the left foot.

6. Passing an officer.

i. When a soldier passes an officer he will salute on the third pace before reaching him, and lower the hand on the third pace after passing him; if carrying a cane he will place it smartly under the left arm, cutting away the hand before saluting. (See para. 4, above.) During the salute the soldier will look the officer full in the face.

ii. Recruits will be practised in marching two or three together, saluting points being placed on either side. When several men are together, the man nearest to the point will give the time.

They should be practised in saluting officers on the

move as well as fixed saluting points.

7. When sitting.

A soldier, if sitting when an officer approaches, will stand at attention, facing the officer, and salute with the hand; if two or more men are sitting or standing about the senior warrant officer, N.C.O., or oldest soldier will face the officer, call the whole to attention, and alone will salute (as above).

8. When addressing or delivering a message to an officer.

When a soldier addresses or delivers a written message to an officer he will halt two paces from him and proceed as in para. 3, above.

When appearing before an officer in a room, he will salute without removing his cap.

9. When without a cap, etc.

A soldier without his cap, or when carrying anything other than his arms, will not salute, but will, if standing still, come to attention as an officer passes; if walking, he will turn his head smartly towards the officer in passing him, keeping his arms steady by the side.

10. When riding a horse.

A soldier mounted without arms will salute as follows:—

When riding with both hands on the reins a soldier passing an officer will turn his head and eyes in the direction of the officer, without moving his hands.

When holding the reins in one hand only, he will drop the right hand to the full extent of the arm behind the right thigh, fingers half closed, back of the hand to the right, and turn his head in the direction of the officer.

11. When riding a horse of a team in a wagon or limber.

A soldier salutes with the whip as follows:—

i. Bring the whip to the recover (as with a sword).

ii. Pass it over the withers of the off horse, right arm extended, but with the elbow raised and slightly bent, hand in line with the waist, back of the hand up and inclined to the front, all fingers firmly closed on the stock and thong. The driver should hold his body erect, with the shoulders square to the front, and look the officer full in the face. When the salute is finished the whip is brought to the recover and then down to the position of attention. The salute commences four paces from the officer and finishes four paces after passing him.

A driver when halted or at the trot salutes by coming to *attention* and looking the officer full in the face.

iii. The position of attention mounted.

The driver, as soon as he has mounted and adjusted his reins so that he has an even feeling

on both horses' mouths, takes the whip out of his leg iron with the right hand, which he passes through the loop at the end of the stock, and places on the right thigh, back up, grasping stock and thong close together, with the elbow a few inches from the body, whip pointing to the horse's left eaf.

12. When driving a horsed vehicle.

The driver will salute by bringing his whip to the perpendicular position, with the right hand resting on the thigh, and turning his head smartly towards an officer passing him.

13. When driving a mechanical vehicle (including

bicycles).

The rider of a bicycle (pedal or motor) or driver of a mechanical vehicle, will not be required to salute when the vehicle is in motion, owing to the danger of taking the eyes off the road.

When the vehicle is stationary, he will salute by turning his head smartly towards an officer passing him, but will not remove his hands from the handlebar or

steering wheel.

14. When riding on a horsed or mechanical vehicle.

All ranks will salute by "sitting at attention" and looking straight to their front. If seated beside a guard iron, they will grasp it with the nearer hand.

101. Saluting with arms

1. At the halt.

A soldier, if halted, will salute as follows:—

i. If at the order when an officer passes he will turn towards the officer and stand to attention.

ii. If at the slope when an officer passes he will salute by carrying the right hand smartly to the butt, forefinger just below the small of the butt, forearm horizontal, back of the hand uppermost, fingers straight, thumb close to the forefinger. (See Plate XIII.)

The salute will commence three paces before the officer passes the soldier and the hand will be cut away on the third pace after he has

passed him.

iii. A rifleman if at the shoulder will salute by tapping the sling smartly with the left hand, forearm horizontal, back of the hand to the front, fingers straight. The salute will commence and finish as described in ii. above.

2. On the move.

- i. When a soldier, other than a rifleman, carrying a rifle, passes an officer, he will do so at the *slope*, and will salute as laid down in para. ii. above; at the same time turning the head towards the officer saluted and looking him full in the face. He will salute on the third pace before reaching him, and will cut the hand away and turn the head to the front on the third pace after passing him.
- ii. A rifleman when passing an officer will do so at the shoulder and will salute as laid down in para. 1, iii., above; at the same time turning the head towards the officer saluted and looking him full in the face. He will salute on the third pace before reaching him and cut the hand away and turn the head to the front on the third pace after passing him.

- 3. Delivering messages to or addressing officers.
- i. When a soldier, other than a rifleman carrying a rifle, delivers a written message to or addresses an officer he will do so at the *slope*. Unless the officer is on the move, the soldier will halt two paces from the officer, salute as laid down in para. 1, ii., above, and deliver the message; if no reply is needed or when the reply is received, he will salute as before, turn about and march off in quick time.

ii. A rifleman approaching an officer for a similar purpose will do so at the shoulder.

Halting as above, he will salute and come to the order. After delivery of his message as above, he will shoulder arms, salute, turn about and march off.

4. Sentries.

Sentries when saluting will halt, turn to the front, and, except when presenting arms, salute as laid down in para. 1, ii. and iii. above. They will always take one pace forward before coming to the *slope* from the *order*.

Sentries in their boxes will salute by coming to attention.

See also Chapter XIII.

Other honours and salutes paid by guards and sentries are detailed in King's Regulations.

5. Officers.

- i. Without arms.—An officer without arms will salute with the hand as laid down in Sec. 100, 1.
 - ii. With the sword.—As laid down in Sec. 186.

CHAPTER VI

PLATOON DRILL

102. Object of platoon drill

The object of platoon drill is to enable the platoon, when it takes its place in the company, to carry out any movement the company commander may direct, whether laid down in this manual or improvised to meet the circumstances of the moment. The sections of each platoon must be exercised previously in all the movements of squad drill, so as to fit them to take their place in their platoon.

103. General rules

- 1. The platoon (Plates XIX and XX) may be formed as follows:
 - i. In line (as in squad drill).
 - ii. In column of fours, or in file (as in squad drill).
 - iii. In column of route. (See Plate XXII.)
- 2. The platoon commander and the platoon serjeant, when the platoon is acting alone, or at a distance from other platoons, will place themselves where they can best exercise supervision. The normal position of commanders and supernumeraries in line and in column of route is shown on Plates XIX, XX, and XXII.
- 3. In all movements in fours, except where otherwise laid down, commanders and supernumeraries retain the relative positions they occupied before fours were formed.

4. In column of route the left will direct, with the following exceptions:—

i. In countries where the "off side" rule of the

road obtains. (See Sec. 125, 3.)

ii. When the right is the pivot flank.

iii. When increasing frontage on the left.

In the above cases the right will direct,

5. The following will act as guides:-

 When a platoon is in line the section commander on the directing flank acts as guide, and is responsible for the maintenance of direction.

ii. In column of route, fours or in file the section

commander on the directing flank.

6. i. In platoon drill, dressing will be taken up by each man on completion of each movement, as in Sec. 47, 2.

ii. For ceremonial purposes, however, the platoon when in line should be practised in dressing by word of command. On the command Right (or Left)—Dress by the platoon commander, the platoon serjeant will move out a distance of five paces from the flank of his platoon in quick time, and face the flank in line with the front rank. The men will act as in Sec. 47, 1, and as soon as the dressing is correct, the platoon serjeant will give the command Eyes—Front and fall in.

7. Before a movement in close order is made, arms will be sloped. In Rifle and English Light Infantry regiments, which drill in close order at the trail, the men will trail arms on the command Quick or Double March, and will halt, come to the Order, and stand at ease on the command or signal Halt.

- 8. Units will frequently be practised in reassembling when dispersed.
- 9. When a supernumerary requires to pass through the ranks the two files immediately opposite him will make way on the command Make-Way. If he is coming from the front they will take a pace to the rear, and a side pace outwards; if from the rear, a pace forward and a side pace outwards. They will resume their positions as soon as the supernumerary has passed through.
- 10. When a unit retires it may do so with its ranks changed or unchanged; in the latter case the supernumerary rank retains its position and in the former case it takes up its new position by the outer flanks (see Sec. 50, 2).
- 11. When a unit is required to halt on reaching a new alignment necessitated by a change of front or is required to halt as soon as a change of formation has been completed, the command At the Halt will be prefixed to the cautionary order given; each man will then halt and take up his dressing on reaching the new alignment.

Similarly, when a change of formation is initiated when a unit is already on the move, the command *Quick—March* is unnecessary and should be omitted

from the orders given.

12. Platoons will be exercised in the movements detailed in Secs. 50—53, the word platoon being substituted for squad. They will also be trained to adopt rapidly and without confusion the open formations described in Sec. 19, 6.

Many movements used in company drill can be carried out as platoon drill by substituting the word platoon for company.

104. Forming up, inspection, telling off, and proving a platoon

Unless otherwise ordered the platoon will fall in for inspection by its commander, in line. The inspection should usually be carried out at the order as follows:-

i. Platoon—Attention. Fix—Bayonets. Given by platoon serjeant.

The rear rank will step back and dress as in Sec. 47. 2. The appointments, clothing, etc., will then be inspected by the platoon commander.

(Unfix-Bayonets. ii. For Inspection, Port—Arms. Examine—Arms. (If required.) Arms will then be inspected as in Secs. 68

and 69. Platoon-Attention. Close Order-

March. Number. Form—Fours. Form—
Two-deep. About—Turn. Form
—Fours.
Form—Two-deep. About—Turn,
etc.

Given by platoon commander.

CHAPTER VII

COMPANY DRILL

105. Object of company drill

The object of company drill is to train the four platoons to work together as parts of the same tactical unit, and to acquire flexibility and the power of rapid manœuvre within the company.

106. General rules

- 1. A company may be formed as follows:
 - i. In line. (Plate XXI.)
 - ii. In close column of platoons. (Plate XXI.)
 - iii. In column of platoons. (Plate XXI.)
 - iv. In column of fours or in file.
 - v. In column of route. (Plate XXII.)
- 2. The positions of all commanders and supernumeraries in various formations are shown in the Plates; in column of fours or in file they retain their positions as shown in Plate XXI, Fig. 1, but, during drill, the company commander and second in command will place themselves where they can best exercise supervision.

The positions of the company serjeant-major and the company quarter-master-serjeant, as shown in Plate XXI, remain the same, whether the company is by the

right or by the left.

- 3. Guides.—The following will act as guides:—
- i. In line ... The section commander on the directing flank.

ii. In column, or close column of platoons.

The four section commanders on the directing flank,

When moving to the right the left will direct; when moving to the left, the right will direct, section commanders being responsible for direction.

iv. In column of route

The left will direct (except in countries where the "off side" rule of the road obtains as in Sec. 125, 3). Section commanders being responsible for direction.

- 4. The general rules for platoon drill enumerated in Sec. 103 apply equally to company drill where applicable.
- 5. Unless otherwise ordered, a company will fall in in close column of platoons, and will be inspected and proved as in Sec. 104.
- 6. A company in line, column, or close column will march by the right, except when the left is the pivot flank,
- 7. In company drill each man will take up his dressing on the completion of each movement as in Sec. 47, 2. For ceremonial purposes, however, the company should be practised in dressing by word of command.

The following is the procedure when the command Right (or Left)—Dress is given by the company com-

mander.

In line the company serjeant-major will

company and when completed give the command Eyes—Front.

In column or close column, on the command Right (or Left)—Dress each platoon serjeant will move out to a distance of five paces from the inner flank of his platoon, in quick time, and face the flank, in line with the front rank.

The company serjeant-major will cover off the guides and will then give the command Steady, whereupon the platoon serjeants will complete the dressing of their platoons, commencing from the platoon of formation and give the command Eyes—Front. When the rear platoon has received this order, the company serjeant-major and platoon serjeants will resume their original positions in quick time taking the time from the word front.

If the platoon serjeant is not available, the flank

section commander will dress the platoon.

- 8. When the company is required to halt as soon as a change of formation has been completed the command will be preceded by the caution At the Halt. Similarly, when a change of formation is initiated when a unit is already on the move, the command Quick—March is unnecessary and should be omitted from the orders given.
- 9. Movements and formations for which detail is given in fours can also be made in file or single file.
- 10. When it is desirous to Advance (or Retire) in column of route this caution should precede all other commands.

- 11. When companies are numerically strong, movement to the flank will be made in fours instead of in file.
- 12. In the detail of company drill the title of the movement is shown in *italics*, and is followed by the company commander's commands in thick type. The detail of the movement then follows, in which orders to be given by platoon commanders are printed in *italics*. The company commander's cautions or words of command, when referred to in the detail, are printed in SMALL CAPITALS.

107. A company in close column of platoons falling in with or without the drum *

1. On the command Fall in from the company serjeant-major, the drummer will beat a double flam, upon which the right section commanders of each platoon will come to attention and take one pace forward (at the order). They will be covered off by the company serjeant-major, who then gives the command Steady. After a pause of four seconds the drummer will beat a flam, upon which the company will come to attention. The drummer will count a pause of two seconds and will then beat another flam, when the company will take one pace to the front. After a further pause of two seconds the drummer will beat a roll when the company will take up their dressing and remain looking to the right. When the whole of the company is steady the drum will cease to roll, finishing up with a sharp tap on the drum, when

^{*} Guards, guard of honour, and other ceremonial parades can be formed up on similar lines, except that men will take up their dressing on the command Right (or Left)—Dress.

the company will turn their heads and eyes sharply to the front. The senior officer on parade then gives Company Stand at—Ease, Call the Roll, upon which the officers will join and inspect their platoons.

2. When falling in without the drum the company serjeant-major will give the command Fall in, upon which the right section commanders of each platoon will take one pace forward (at the order). They will be covered off by the company serjeant-major who will then give the command Steady. Upon this command the company will come to attention, take a pace forward and, after a pause, will take up their dressing as in Sec. 47, 2.

On completion of the dressing the senior officer will give the command Stand at—Ease. Call the Roll, upon which the officers will join and inspect their platoons.

3. When a company falls in, with the drum, as part of a battalion, the right section commanders will, after taking the pace forward, turn to their right and take up their covering. On the command *Steady*, from the regimental serjeant-major, they will turn to their left and the dressing will be completed as above.

108. A company when halted changing ranks About—Turn.

The whole will turn about except officers and supernumeraries, who will regain their positions by passing round the flanks or through the ranks of the company, section commanders making way for them on the command *Make way*, by placing themselves between the files on their right or left, and afterwards aligning themselves with the front rank.

- i. If ranks are changed on the march, section commanders will make way by checking the pace slightly and inclining outwards.
- ii. If it is desired to turn about without changing ranks, the command ABOUT—TURN will be preceded by the caution THE COMPANY WILL RETIRE, and in order to resume the original direction THE COMPANY WILL ADVANCE, in which case officers and supernumeraries will turn about but will not change their position (see Sec. 50, 2).

109. Close column movements

1. A close column when halted changing direction. Change direction Right. Right—Wheel.

The company, except the leading platoon, will make a partial turn to the left; the leading platoon will not turn, but will look to the right.

Ouick-March.

Each man will move round on the circumference of a circle, of which the right of the leading platoon is the centre. The outer flank will direct, but when platoons are of unequal strength they will maintain the same relative positions as they held before the wheel. The second in command will superintend the wheel on the left flank, the company serjeant-major on the right, moving out after the command Wheel, the former must, in regulating the pace, watch the left guide of the rear platoon, who will continue to march at a full pace throughout, and on whose movement the march of every man in the company should be made to depend.

When the company has circled round to the required

angle, the command For—ward, Mark—Time or Halt will be given, on which all will at once turn in the required direction.

i. When wheeling to the left, it will be the duty of the company serjeant-major to watch the right guide of the

rear platoon as above.

ii. A close column moving in fours will wheel as above, the leading four of each platoon wheeling in the same manner as the leading platoon above, the fours in rear making a partial turn outwards, and following round after the leading fours.

- 2. A close column when halted forming column of fours.
- i. Advance (or Retire) in Column of Fours from the Right. Form Fours—Right.

The commander of the leading (or rear) platoon will give No. ... Platoon, Left (or Right)—Wheel. Quick—March, and each platoon commander will act similarly in time to gain his place in column of fours.

Move to the Right (or Left) in Column of Fours.
 Form Fours—Right (or Left).

The commander of the leading (or rear) platoon will give No. ... Platoon, Quick—March, and each remaining platoon commander will give No. ... Platoon, Left (or Right)—Wheel. Quick—March in time to gain his place in column of fours.

(a) Unless otherwise ordered a company will move off from the right of the leading platoon, or from the left of the rear platoon.

(b) A company can be marched off from any platoon as follows: ADVANCE (or RETIRE), ETC., IN COLUMN OF

Fours in the Following Order: No. 1, No. 2, No. 3, No. 4 Platoon.

3. A close column when halted moving to a flank in fours.

Move to the Right (or Left) in Fours. Form Fours—
Right (or Left). Quick—March.

The platoon on the right or left will direct unless any other platoon is detailed.

4. A close column when halted forming line facing in the same direction.

On the Left, Form—Line. Remainder, Left—Turn. Quick—March.

The leading platoon will stand fast. The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to the spot where their inner flank will rest. Each platoon will then wheel parallel to the alignment, and when opposite to its place in line will be halted and turned to the right by its commander.

5. A close column on the march forming line at the halt, facing a flank.

By the Left, At the Halt, Facing Left, Form-Line.

The commander of the rear platoon will at once give At the Halt, Left—Form. Each of the other commanders will form his platoon into line in like manner when it arrives at column distance from the platoon next in rear.

- 6. Advancing or retiring in column from close column.
- i. Advance in-Column.

The commander of the leading platoon will give No. ... Platoon will Advance, By the Right, Quick-March,

and the remaining platoons will be similarly marched off when the platoon next in front has reached column distance.

ii. Retire in Column. The Company will Retire.
About—Turn.

Platoon commanders will march their platoons in succession at column distance, giving the command No. ... Platoon, By the Left. Quick—March.

7. A column on the march closing to close column.

Form Close Column (or Close Column at . . . Paces), Remainder Double—March.

The leading platoon will continue to advance in quick time, the remainder taking up the quick time as they

gain correct distance.

If the command is AT THE HALT, FORM CLOSE—COLUMN (or CLOSE COLUMN AT ... PACES) the leading platoon will at once be halted by its commander. The remainder will be halted successively on reaching their positions in close column.

8. A column when halted closing to close column.

Close Column on No..... Platoon. Remainder, Ouick—March.

The leading platoon will stand fast. The remainder will step off and will be halted by their commanders on reaching their positions in close column.

i. If it is required to form close column on any but the leading platoon the command will be Close Column on No. ... Platoon. Platoon(s) in Front will Retire. About—Turn. Remainder, Quick—March.

The named platoon will stand fast. Platoon(s) in front will turn about. All except the named platoon will step off and will be halted by their commanders on reaching their positions in close column. Platoon(s) in front will be turned about by their commanders.

- ii. If it is required to form on the rear platoon the command will be Close Column on No. ... Platoon. Remainder will Retire. About—Turn. Quick—March. The movement will be carried out as above.
- A close column moving to a flank in fours forming line at the halt,

At the Halt, Facing Left (or Right), Form-Line.

The commander of the left (or right) platoon will give No. ... Platoon—Halt. Left (or Right)—Turn.

The remaining platoons will be led by their guides by the shortest route into their positions in line and will be turned to the left (or right) by order of their commanders.

110. Column movements

1. A column on the march changing direction. Change Direction—Right.

The commander of the leading platoon will give the command No. ... Platoon, Right—Form, and, when the platoon is formed in the new direction, For—ward. The remaining platoons, on arriving at the same point, will be formed successively in a similar manner.

- i. Before changing direction *left* a column should normally be ordered to march by the left.
- ii. A column can similarly change direction half (quarter or three-quarter) right.

2. A column when halted forming column of fours.

Advance in Column of Fours from the Right. Form Fours—Right. Platoons Left—Wheel, Quick—March.

Each platoon will move in the required direction, forming column of fours.

When a column is on the march, platoons may, if desired, advance in fours in succession. On the caution In Succession Advance in Fours from the Right, the commander of the leading platoon will form fours right and wheel to the left. On arriving at the same point the commander of each succeeding platoon will act in a similar manner.

- 3. A column on the march forming line facing in the same direction.
- On the Left. Form—Line. Remainder, Left In—cline. Double—March.

The leading platoon will continue to advance in quick time, dressing by the right. When each platoon is immediately in rear of its position in line, it will receive from its commander No. ... Platoon. Right In—cline and on reaching the alignment Break into quick time. Quich—March. Dressing will be by the right in each case.

i. If the company is halted the command QUICK—MARCH will be given instead of DOUBLE—MARCH. The leading platoon will stand fast, the remainder will act as in squad drill and on reaching the alignment the command *Halt* instead of *Break into quick time*. Quick—March will be given.

- ii. If the command Form Fours—Left instead of Left In—cline is given the movement will be carried out as described in Sec. 109, 4.
- 4. A column when halted forming line facing a flank and moving forward.
- By the Left. Into Line. Platoons Left-Form. Quick-March.

The men will act as in squad drill, the left guide of each platoon acting, on the word FORM, as the pivot man of a squad.

When line is formed the company commander will give For-ward. By the Left.

111. Line movements

- 1. A line when halted forming column (or close column) facing in the same direction.
- On the Right. Form Column (or Close Column) of Platoons. Remainder, Form Fours—Right. Quick—March.

The platoon on the right will stand fast. The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to their positions in column (or close column), where they will receive from their commanders No. ... Platoon—Halt. Left—Turn. On the command Halt, the right guides will at once turn to their left and take up their covering and distance from the right guide of the platoon in front, the platoons dressing by the right as soon as they have turned to the left.

2. A line when halted advancing in column of platoons.

Advance in Column of Platoons from the Right (or Left). Remainder, Form Fours—Right. Quick—March.

The right (or left) platoon will advance. The remainder will act as in squad drill, mark time two paces, and then lead on. When the guide of each platoon is in rear of the centre of the preceding platoon, the commander will give No. ... Platoon. Left In—cline, and on arriving in column of platoons again Left In—cline.

3. A line when halted forming column facing a flank at the halt.

At the Halt. Into Column. Platoons. Right—Form. Quick—March.

The men will act as in squad drill, the right guide of each platoon acting as the pivot man of a squad.

112. Movements from column of fours

1. A column of fours forming forward into column of platoons.

The Company will form Column of Platoons. On the Left. Form—Platoons.

The men will act as in squad drill. Formation will be made on the leading guide of each platoon: When column has been formed the company commander will give For—ward. By the Right.

A column of fours may, if desired, increase frontage by platoons in succession, in which case the company commander will give the caution The Company WILL

FORM COLUMN OF PLATOONS IN SUCCESSION ON THE LEFT. FORM—PLATOONS. The commander of the leading platoon will at once give No. ... Platoon. On the Left. Form—Platoon, followed by For—ward, and on reaching the same point the remaining commanders will act in a similar manner.

2. A column of fours forming forward into close column of platoons at the halt.

At the Halt. On the Left. Form Close Columns of Platoons.

The commander of the leading platoon will at once give No. ... Platoon. At the Halt. On the Left. Form—Platoon. The commanders of the remaining platoons on arriving at close column distance will act in similar manner.

3. A column of fours forming column (or close column) of platoons at the halt facing a flank.

At the Halt. Facing Left. Form Column (or Close Column) of Platoons.

The commander of the leading platoon will halt his unit and turn it to the left by giving, No. ... Platoon. Halt. Left—Turn. The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to their positions in column (or close column), where they will receive the command No. ... Platoon. Halt. Left—Turn. On the word Halt, the right guides will at once turn to their left and take up their covering and distance from the right guide of the platoon in front.

4. A column of fours forming column facing a flank and moving forward.

Facing Left, Advance in Column of Platoons.

The commander of the leading platoon will give No. ... Platoon. Left—Turn. The remainder will mark time four paces and then lead on in fours.

Each platoon commander, when the leading guide of his platoon is in rear of the centre of the preceding platoon, will give Left In—cline, and when in column, again Left In—cline.

113. Other movements

Other drill movements besides those detailed in Secs. 109-112 may be practised. The principles as regards words of command, cautions, and formations, given in the above sections will be adhered to.

114. Dismissing

The officers will first be ordered to fall out, when they will move in quick time to the commander of the parade, form up in line, salute, and form up behind him till the company is dismissed.

The company will then be dismissed as in Sec. 55.

CHAPTER VIII BATTALION DRILL

115. Object of battalion drill

1. Battalion drill is the combination of companies moving as in company drill. The object of battalion drill is to obtain unified control so that the battalion may move as one body, while at the same time being suitably disposed to move in companies or by groups as may be required.

116. General rules

- 1. The battalion may be formed as follows:
 - i. In line.
 - ii. In close column or column.
 - iii. In column of fours.
 - iv. In mass. (Plate XXIII.)
 - v. In column of route
- ² 2. For battalion drill a battalion will usually form up in close column of companies.
- 3. Mass is generally the most convenient formation to be adopted by a battalion when forming up for, or dismissing after, training or field operations. Mass, however, is not a tactical formation; and when on active service in proximity to the enemy, or subject to attack or observation by enemy aircraft, the formation adopted will depend on the concealment, cover, and dispersion desirable.

- 4. Details of the normal positions, intervals, and distances for a battalion in mass are given in Plate XXIII. These details may be modified as may be dictated by the ground or other circumstances.
- 5. Formations of a battalion in line, column and column of fours will seldom be required except for ceremonial parades and reviews.
- 6. In mass, when platoons are of unequal strength, the inner flank of each company will be at five paces interval from the outer flank of the strongest platoon of the company next to it.
- 7. Dressing will be carried out on the principles as laid down in Sec. 106, 7, where applicable; the adjutant and regimental serjeant-major assisting generally.
- 8. When the battalion is required to halt as soon as a change of formation has been completed, the command will be preceded by the caution At the Halt. Similarly, when a change of formation is initiated when a unit is already on the move, the command Quick—March is unnecessary and should be omitted from the orders given.
- 9. The battalion commander will place himself where he can best exercise supervision; the adjutant will usually accompany him.
- 10. After forming mass on the left, the right will be named as the directing flank, and vice versa.
- 11. In the detail of battalion drill the title of the movement is shown in *italics* and is followed by the battalion commander's commands in thick type; the latter when referred to in the detail, are printed in SMALL CAPITALS.

When commands are given by company and platoon commanders it is so stated in the detail.

12. The movements from and into columns of fours can also be used in the case of column of route and vice versa.

117. Movements from and into mass

1. A mass moving off in column of route.

Advance (or Retire) in Column of Route from the Right (or Left), No. ... Company leading.

The company commander of the named company will give: No. ... Company. Advance (or Retire) in column of route from the Right (or Left) Form Fours—Right (or Left). The commander of the leading (or rear) platoon will then give No. ... Platoon. Left (or Right)—Wheel. Quick—March, and the remaining platoons of the company will be marched off by their commanders in succession in the same way. The remaining companies will successively be marched off in the same way in time to follow the preceding company.

2. A column of route forming mass facing in the same direction.

At the Halt, on the Left, Form-Mass.

The commander of the leading company will at once give the caution No. ... Company. At the Halt. On the left. Form close column of platoons. The leading platoon commander then gives No. ... Platoon. At the halt. On the Left. Form—Platoon. Each platoon commander of the leading company will act similarly when his leading guide reaches close column distance

from the platoon in front. The remaining companies will disengage to the left, and will be led to their respective positions in mass, where close column of platoons will be similarly formed.

Mass can similarly be formed on the right.

3. A column of route forming mass facing a flank. At the Halt, Facing Left, Form—Mass.

The commander of the leading company will at once give the caution No. ... Company. At the halt. Facing left. Form close column of Platoons. The leading platoon commander then gives No. ... Platoon—Halt. Left—Turn. The remaining platoons of the leading company will be led by the shortest route to their position in close column of platoons, where they will receive a similar command.

As the leading platoon of each succeeding company arrives at the correct interval from the preceding company, the company and platoon commanders will act in a similar manner and close column of platoons will be formed.

118. Close column and column movements

1. A close column when halted changing direction. Change direction Right, Right—Wheel.

The battalion except the leading company will make a left incline. The leading company will look to the right. Quick—March.

The movement will be completed as in Company Drill, Sec. 109, 1.

A close column moving in fours will wheel as above,

the battalion, except the leading section of fours in each company, making a left incline and the leading section of fours looking to the right.

A close column advancing (or retiring) in column of fours.
 In succession Advance (or Retire) in Column of fours from the Right (or Left) of Companies.
 No. ... Company leading.

The commander of the named company will give No. ... Company. Form Fours—Right (or Left). Left (or Right)—Wheel. Quick—March.

Each succeeding company commander will act similarly in time to gain his place in column of fours.

3. A column advancing (or retiring) in column of fours.

Advance (or Retire) in Column of fours from the Right (or Left) of Companies. No. ... Company leading.

The commander of the named company will give No. ... Company, Form Fours—Right (or Left). Left (or Right)—Wheel. Quick—March. Each succeeding company commander will act similarly in time to gain his place in column of fours.

4. A close column or column moving to the flank in column of fours.

In succession move to the Right (or Left) in Column of fours. No. ... Company leading.

The commander of the named Company will give No. ... Company, Form Fours—Right (or Left). Quick—March. Each succeeding company commander will act similarly in time to gain his place in column of fours.

5. A close column or column when halted forming line facing in the same direction.

On the Left (or Right). Form Line. Remainder, Form Fours—Left, Quick—March.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 109, 4. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

6. A close column on the march forming line facing a flank.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill,

Sec. 109, 5. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

7. Advancing in column from close column.

Advance in-Column.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 109, 6. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

8. A column on the march closing to close column at the halt.

At the Halt, Form Close—Column.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 109, 7. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

- 9. A close column when halted forming column at the halt.
- Form Column from No. 4. Remainder, Quick— March.

The rear company will stand fast, the remainder will step off and on reaching column distance will be halted by their commanders.

ii. Form Column from No. 1 Company. Companies in Rear, About—Turn.

Companies in rear will turn about.

Ouick-March.

The leading company will stand fast The remainder will step off and on reaching column distance will be halted and turned about by their commanders.

- 10. If it is required for form column on a centre company, the named company will stand fast, companies in rear will act as described and companies in front will step off on the command Quick—March and will be halted by their commanders on reaching column distance.
- 11. A column when halted closing to close column at the halt.

Form Close Column on No. ... Company. Remainder, Quick—March.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 109, 8. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

12. A column on the march changing direction.

Change Direction—Right.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 110,1. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

13. A column when halted forming line facing a flank.

By the Left. Into Line. Companies, Left—Form.

Quick—March.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 110, 4. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

119. Line movements

1. A line when halted forming column (or close column) facing in the same direction.

On the Right. Form Column (or Close Column). Remainder, Form Fours—Right. Quick—March.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 111, 1. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

2. A line when halted advancing in column.

Advance in Column of Companies from the Right (or Left). Remainder, Form Fours—Right (or Left). *Ouick—March.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 111, 2. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

3. A line when halted forming column facing a flank at the halt.

At the Halt. Into Column. Companies, Right-Form. Quick-March.

The men will act as in squad drill, the right guide of each company acting as the pivot man of a squad.

4. A line when halted forming a line of companies in fours facing in the same direction.

Advance in Fours from the Right of Companies. Form Fours—Right. Companies, Left—Wheel. Quick—March. No. ... will direct.

The movement will be made as directed, company commanders placing themselves two paces in front of the leading four of their respective companies.

120. Movements from column of fours

- 1. The following movements from column of fours will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 112. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.
- i. A column of fours forming forward into column.
 The Battalion will form Column on the Left. Form —Companies.
 - ii. A column of fours forming forward into close column at the halt.

At the Halt, on the Left, Form Close-Column.

- iii. A column of fours forming column or close column at the halt, facing a flank.
- At the Halt, Facing Left, Form—Column (or Close Column).
 - iv. A column of fours forming column facing a flank and moving forward.

Facing Left, Advance in-Column.

v. A close column moving to a flank in fours forming line.

At the Halt, Facing Left (or Right), Form-Line.

2. If it is desired to form forward into column, each company forming on the same point, the command will be In Succession on the Left, Form—Companies. The commander of the leading company will give the command No. ... Company—On the Left, Form—Company. For—ward.

The remaining companies will form on the left and move forward by order of company commanders on reaching the point on which the leading company has

formed.

CHAPTER IX

FIELD SIGNALS

121. General remarks

- 1. Control of troops in the field, particularly when deployed, can often be exercised better and more quickly by signals, then by verbal or written messages. When troops are actually to be committed to a definite form of action against the enemy, full instructions should be given by the commander whenever possible. But during the approach march and at all times when quickness of movement is the first and main essential, control by signals should be used, provided the conditions are suitable.
- 2. When controlling troops by signal a "short blast" of the whistle (i.e. "the cautionary blast," see Sec. 124, 1) will first be blown, before making the signal, in order to attract the attention of the troops. When he is satisfied that it is understood, the commander will drop his hand to his side, on which the units under him will act as ordered. Signals should be made with whichever arm will show most clearly what is meant.

122. Signals

The following "control signals" are used:

1. Extend.—The arm extended to full extent over the head and waved slowly from side to side, the hand to be open and to come down as low as the hips on both sides of the body.

If it is required to extend to a flank the commander will point to the required flank after finishing the signal.

- 2. Advance.—The arm swung from rear to front below the shoulder.
- 3. Halt.—The arm raised at full extent above the head.
 - 4. Retire.—The arm circled above the head.
- 5. Change direction Right (or Left).—The arm is first extended in line with the shoulder. A circular movement is then made, on completion of which the arm and body should point in the required direction.

i. When troops are halted the above signal means

change position, right (or left).

- ii. When troops are in column of fours, or in file or in signal file, the above signal means right (or left) wheel.
- 6. Right (or Left) incline or Turn.—The body or horse turned in the required direction and arm extended in line with the shoulder, and pointing in the required direction.
- 7. Close.—The hand placed on top of the head, elbow to be square to the right or left according to which hand is used.
- i. The above signal denotes *Close* (on the centre). If it is required to close on a flank, the leader will point to the required flank before dropping his hand.

ii. If, when on the march, it is required to halt as well as close, the leader will perform the halt signal before

dropping his hand.

8. Quick time.—The hand raised in line with the shoulder, the elbow bent and close to the side.

- 9. Double.—The clenched hand moved up and down between the thigh and shoulder.
- 10. Follow me.—The arm swung from rear to front above the shoulder.
- 11. Lie down.—Two or three slight movements of the open hand towards the ground.
- 12. As you were.—Arm extended downwards, waved across the body, parallel to the ground.
- 13. For signals to be used for the control of machine gun fire, see Small Arms Training, Volume III.

123. Signals with the rifle

The following communicating "signals" are made with the rifle or flags:—

- 1. Enemy in sight in small numbers.—Rifle held above the head, at full extent of the arm and parallel with the ground, muzzle pointing to the front.
- 2. Enemy in sight in large numbers.—As for "Enemy in sight in small numbers," but the rifle raised and lowered frequently.
 - 3. No enemy in sight.—Rifle held up at full extent of

arm, muzzle uppermost.

These signals are valuable in the case of scouts, etc., sent on ahead from their sections. Care should be taken that signal cannot be seen by the enemy.

124. Control by whistle blasts

The following whistle blasts are used :--

1. The cautionary blast (a short blast).—To draw attention to a signal or order about to be given.

2. The rally blast (a succession of short blasts).—
To denote close on the leader in wood, bush, fog or darkness, when the signal cannot be seen.

On the above blast being given, the men will double towards the sound of the whistle, and will rally on the leader, facing in the same direction.

- 3. The alarm blast (a succession of alternate long and short blasts).—To turn out troops from camp or bivouac to fall in or to occupy previously arranged positions.
- 4. Enemy aircraft in sight.—A succession of long blasts on the whistle. Since this signal may often be inaudible, a visual signal will also be used to attract attention, viz., both arms held above the head and hands waved. On this signal troops will either get ready to fire, open out, or take cover, according to the orders in force.
- 5. Enemy aircraft attack over.—Two long blasts repeated at intervals of five seconds. On this, all troops resume previous formations. Troops who have been firing will recharge their magazines before moving off.

CHAPTER X

MARCH DISCIPLINE

125. General instructions

1. The power of undertaking long and rapid marches without loss in numbers and energy is essential to success in war.

The military spirit of troops is reduced by excessive fatigue.

- 2. Column of route is the ordinary marching formation of infantry. The foundation of good march discipline is keeping step and this, together with exact covering, dressing and the maintenance of the prescribed distance from the man in front, must be insisted upon even when marching at ease. Discipline, comfort, and reduction of fatigue depend entirely upon the strictest attention to these points. Thus only will march discipline develop into a habit.
- 3. Units moving in fours will march well into the side of the road in order not to impede traffic, the side of the road depending upon the custom of the country they are in. The directing flank will be in accordance with the rule of the road.
- 4. In tropical climates or under dusty conditions, or in order to render a column less conspicuous from the air, it may be opened out on each side of the road; the centre of the road being kept clear for traffic.

An increase of intervals and distances between men may also be advisable, in which case orders will be issued.

126. The battalion on the march

- 1. Platoon commanders will periodically inspect the men's feet, socks, boots, water bottles, and equipment and ensure correct fitting. They will arrange for short lectures to their men on the importance of march discipline, the orders to be observed during the march, how smoking affects endurance and how thirst is aggravated rather than reduced by frequent recourse to the water-bottle. Every endeavour must be made to develop self-discipline in the men. The success of this training will depend on the efforts and preparations made by platoon commanders as well as on the example they set themselves. March discipline is the ceremonial of war. A battalion which is slack in march discipline is generally slack in battle. Want of march discipline has been the cause of battalions being unable through fatigue to take part in a battle after a march. The strictest march discipline will be enforced at all times, especially marching to and from the range, when working parties are marching to and from work, etc.
- 2. The following rules will be observed by infantry on the march:
 - i. Fours will be kept dressed, closed up, and covered off. No officer, warrant officer, or N.C.O. will march outside the column. Bicycles will not be allowed to project outside the column.

ii. An officer, warrant officer, or N.C.O. will march in rear and another at the head of each platoon.

iii. Halts will be made for ten minutes at ten minutes to every clock hour, irrespective of the hour of the start or the nearness of the end of the march.

- iv. At the halt units will fall out on the side of the road on which they are marching, except that when the situation permits, officers may fall out on the other side.
 - v. Every man in a four will change places after each ten minutes' halt. The men originally on the inner flank falling in on the outer flank and the remainder of the four moving to their left or right.
- vi. A battalion will start and halt by companies by whistle or signal, or by both. The battalion as a whole will be warned by whistle one minute before each halt and start.
- vii. Troops will march at attention when the warning signal to halt is given. Troops will fall in and stand-at-case when the warning signal to start is given. On the command to advance they will come to attention, and march off at the slope.
- viii. During halts cross roads and road junctions will be left clear for traffic.
 - ix. Every man will take off his equipment (anti-gas respirator excepted) each clock-hour halt and put it on again at one minute before starting. Men will be practised in taking off and putting on equipment quickly. Under suitable conditions they should be made to lie down during halts, and, if possible, raise their feet so as to relieve them of pressure and allow the blood to circulate.
 - x. Mounted officers will spend most of their time looking after the rear, not the front, of their

units and will regulate the pace to avoid distress behind.

- xi. Men should never be allowed to double. If distance is lost it will be picked up gradually. If this fails word will be sent to the head of the column to march slower. Mounted company commanders will see to this.
- xii. Organized singing on the march will be encouraged in every battalion. It helps men to march well even when fatigued.
- xiii. The more tired the men are at the end of a march, the more strictly must march discipline be enforced.
- xiv. Men unable to keep up till the next halt should be instructed to fall out and follow in rear of the column. Written permission to fall out will be given them by an officer. N.C.Os. and men will not fall out to take care of sick men without written instructions from an officer.
- xv. Men's feet will be inspected by platoon commanders immediately after every march.

127. Horsed and pack transport

The following rules will be observed as regards animal transport.

i. Before starting.

(a) Before commencing a march, commanders should make certain that harness and saddlery are correct, that shoeing has been properly attended to, and that the animals and vehicles are fit for the march,

- (b) Even when marehing at an early hour the animals should be watered and a small feed should be given before starting.
- (c) Sufficient time should be allowed each morning for the men to saddle up earefully, but on no account should animals be harnessed up or hooked in an unnecessarily long time before starting.

ii. At the halt.

(a) At one minute before a halt transport will edge into the side of the road so that vehicles may be close in when the order to halt is given.

(b) During any long halts horses will be off-saddled or packs off-loaded and their backs handrubbed. During short halts mounted men will dismount, girths will be loosened, and saddle or pack loads eased or adjusted without orders. Whenever time permits, if only for a few minutes, pack loads will be removed, and in the case of transport poles dropped.

Horses and pack animals will be ready to march again within one minute of the order to

fall in.

(c) A careful examination should be made of animals, harness, saddlery, and vehicles at every halt, especially at the first one. Drivers must be trained to examine their animal's feet and to report injuries, breakages, etc.; they must realise the importance of dealing with an incipient gall immediately it is noticed.

- (d) Opportunities which may occur for watering and feeding should always be seized. Watering must be carried out on a regular system if it is to be done expeditiously: it must be supervised by an officer. In dusty weather the eyes and nose should be sponged out whenever possible.
- (e) At the halts, officers' chargers, led and pack animals, must be on the same side of the road as the rest of the column and will be backed in at right angles to the road with their heads facing the centre of the roadway.

iii. During the march.

(a) Transport will be kept closed up.

(b) No man will be allowed to ride on transport vehicles except in the case of those driven from the box or on those requiring a brakesman on the box. This man will dismount when going up a steep hill or over rough ground. In all other cases the brakesman will march

In all other cases the brakesman will march with his rifle slung and, except when operating the brake, will march clear of the vehicle.

In order to prevent gaps, any dismounted men accompanying transport will march in rear of and close up to the vehicles. Strict march discipline must be insisted on at all times.

In special cases men may, when in possession of a written order from an officer, ride or place their arms and equipment in *empty* wagons.

(c) In all circumstances an even pace must be maintained throughout the column. If a check is unavoidable the suddenness of it may be reduced by pulling into the side

(d) Drivers must ensure that all the animals in a team do their fair share of work; this cannot be obtained unless the former apply their

legs and whips correctly.

(e) Drivers must not lounge in their saddles, as this is liable to cause sore backs.

(f) Men leading animals will be on the off side.

(g) During training the position of mules or horses should frequently be changed: a led mule, for example, loses his back muscles if he is never ridden, and is also apt to acquire the habit of leaning on the off-side of the bit. This change of position may be necessary on a long march.

(h) The brake should be put on sufficiently tight to check but not to skid the wheels. In crossing a valley the brakesman must begin easing it off soon enough for the wheels to be quite free before the beginning of the rise on the other

side is reached.

128. Compliments on the march

- 1. i. Bodies of troops will be ordered to march at attention by the commander of a unit or detachment when passing:—
 - (a) The King, The Queen, and other Members of the Royal Family. (But see also Sec. 169, 5.)

(b) Armed bodies of troops on the march, commanded by an officer.

(c) Guards, escorts, etc.

(d) Their own brigade commander and general officers and officers of the Royal Navy and Royal Air Force of equivalent ranks, when in uniform.

Compliments will be paid by platoons or companies if the companies are too weak to parade in platoons. In such cases the commanders of these bodies will give the command Eyes—right (or left). All officers will salute and also other ranks if in command of platoons.

Small bodies of troops not commanded by officers will

pay compliments to all officers.

ii. Unarmed bodies of troops passing each other will be called to attention and compliments will be paid as in

para. 1, i. above.

- iii. The officer in command of an armed party will return the salute of a N.C.O. in charge of an unarmed party of less than 20 men (see King's Regulations), but will not call the armed party to attention.
- 2. When in command of a party, armed or unarmed, an officer will salute any officer in uniform he passes of a rank senior to himself; also officers of senior rank of other Services.
- 3. Compliments paid by guards and sentries will be returned as in para. 1, above.
- 4. Bodies of troops on the march or on training will only pay compliments to higher commanders once a day. At other times the commander only will salute his seniors.

On other occasions, when the frequent paying of compliments is likely to cause fatigue to the troops, brigade commanders, etc., will use their discretion and issue orders on the subject beforehand.

5. When persons entitled to salutes approach from the rear, compliments will not be paid, but officers will salute.

This will not apply in the case of those members of the Royal Family to whom compliments are paid; in this case troops will be ordered to march at attention.

6. Troops will march at attention until clear of as well as when approaching their parade ground.

129. Sanitation on the march

- 1. Remains of food, paper bags, etc., will be buried or burnt, care being taken that standing crops or undergrowth are not set on fire. Tins will be collected and buried, if possible.
- 2. During long halts, and when necessary during other halts, arrangements will be made for digging latrines. They should be dug, if possible, before the arrival of the troops, and will be filled in when the march is resumed.
- 3. When camps are used or ground is hired for long halts, an officer will be detailed to superintend the sanitary and police arrangements, and special orders will be issued to the troops regarding drinking and washing water, cooking, latrines, disposal of manure, etc.

130. Distances on the march

The normal distance to be maintained between battalions on the march will be 20 yards, and between companies and similar groups will be 10 yards. Distances will be reckoned from the last item of a preceding battalion or company to the head of the leading mounted officer's horse of the next. In the case of groups who have no mounted officer, the leading officer, N.C.O., or section of fours will be considered to be the head. Units and sub-units will often have to march with greater distances between them for tactical and other reasons.

131. Positions of officers, etc.

The positions of officers, etc., laid down for normal column of route do not apply to movements on or near the battlefield, where the battalion commander is responsible that his battalion is arranged to suit the tactical requirements.

For instance, it will often be necessary for all the company commanders to march at the head of the battalion and platoon commanders at the head of their companies where they will be in convenient positions to receive instructions, to reconnoitre ground, or to select methods for passing their commands over obstacles on the line of march.

PART III-CEREMONIAL CHAPTER XI

DRILL-COMPANY AND BATTALION 132. General rules

Notes.—1. The objects of ceremonial are to promote esprit de corps, and, by developing the habits of steadiness and cohesion on the parade ground, to foster the development of those moral qualities that are essential to success in war. These objects will be attained only by the most careful preparation and exact execution of all ceremonial occasions.

2. For ceremonial purposes infantry battalions will be organized into not more than four companies. N.C.Os. and men not armed with a rifle, with the exception of those

who wear the sword, will be issued with rifles.

1. This and the following chapters deal with drill and formation for ceremonial parades. On these occasions companies will be sized and equalized as a temporary measure to meet special requirements. Such variation will not, however, be resorted to on any other occasions than ceremonial and the necessary practice drills for ceremonial, and even then the organization of units will, as far as possible, be preserved in accordance with the

principle laid down for the organization of a battalion.

Formation of companies.—Companies will fall in in line, will be equalized and sized from flanks to centre,

numbered from right to left, and told off into platoons.

The lateral space occupied by each man will be a maximum of 24 inches, but a 2-inch space, elbow to elbow, should be aimed at.

Company commanders will not be mounted on cere-

monial parades.

Dressing will be carried out by word of command (Sec. 20, 5).

(Sec. 20, 5).

Details of company headquarters and section commanders below the rank of serjeant will be in the ranks. Company serjeant-majors and company quarter-master-serjeants will be on the flanks of the front rank of their companies, acting as right and left guide respectively, and will dress the company as required. Serjeants, whether commanding platoons or not, will be two paces in rear of the company at equal intervals apart. All ranks fix bayonets on ceremonial parades.

Warrant officers and staff-serjeants who wear the sword will be in the supernumerary rank

sword will be in the supernumerary rank.

2. In line (see Plate XXVI), the battalion commander will be fifteen paces in front of the centre of the line. The senior major will be six paces in front of the right guide of the battalion, the adjutant six paces in front of the right guide of the battalion, the adjutant six paces in front of the left guide. Company commanders will be six paces in front of the centre of their companies, officers second in command of companies three paces in front of the centre of their companies. Officers commanding platoons three paces in front of the centre of their platoons. If there are less than four officers commanding platoons in any company on parade, the officer second in command and the platoon commanders will divide the company frontage between them. The band will be drawn up ten paces in rear of the colour party.

In close column of companies (see Plate XXVII), which for ceremonial will be at ten paces distance, the battalion commander will be fifteen paces in front of the centre of the leading company. The senior major will be on the directing flank of the battalion three paces from a point midway between the first and second companies, the adjutant immediately in rear of him, between the third and fourth companies, except that when the battalion is on the move, it will be the adjutant's duty to place himself in a position where he can best superintend the direction of the advance and the covering of the guides on the directing flank. Company commanders will be two paces from the guide on the directing flank of their companies. Officers second in command of companies will be three paces in front of the centre of their companies, officers commanding platoons will be three paces in front of the centre of their platoons. The band and drums will be ten paces in rear of the centre of the rear company.

of the rear company.

If there are less than four officers commanding platoons in any company on parade, the officer second in command and the officers commanding platoons will divide up the company frontage equally between them.

3. The colour party.—In line, the colours, each carried by an officer (as directed in King's Regulations), will be placed between the two centre companies; the King's Colour on the right, the Regimental Colour on the left, with a serjeant between them and two N.C.Os. or selected privates, covering them in line with the rear rank. The officer carrying the King's Colour will command the party.

If ranks are changed, the colour party will change flank on the order of the senior officer of the colour party; if the line is ordered to retire, the colour party will turn about, and the centre serjeant, stepping forward two paces, will align himself with the rear rank.

In marching past by companies, the colour party will

be in rear of the centre of the second company, its front rank aligned with the supernumerary rank.

In close column of companies, and when marching past in that formation, the position of the colour party will be in rear of the centre of the second company, the two N.C.Os. or selected privates in the rear rank moving up respectively on the right and left of the colours, and the whole aligned with the supernumerary rank of the company.

4. Marking points and markers.—Flags or posts may be set up to mark the line on which troops are to form, or the line may be picked out, or marked by whitewash. (See Sec. 133.)

The platoon serjeants of the outer platoons of a company are available to act as markers. The words on MARKERS should precede the command given when it is required to dress on markers. In such cases both markers of the company of formation and the outer markers of the remaining companies will double out in the case of deployments from close column on the command QUICK MARCH, and when forming line to a flank on the command LEFT (or RIGHT)—FORM. Markers in giving points will turn towards the point of formation at arm's length in front of the alignment, and recover arms. They will be covered by the regimental serjeant-major who will give the command *Steady* as soon as covered, when markers will slope arms (if necessary change arms). When the men approach they will extend their inner arm at right angles to the body with the fist clenched on which the line will dress. When the dressing is completed markers will resume their positions (changing arms if necessary) at the double on

the command Eyes—Front given to the last unit to complete its dressing.

5. For inspection, paying compliments when halted, and marching past in slow time ranks will be at four paces distance. The words of command for opening ranks will be OPEN—ORDER—MARCH, and for closing ranks CLOSE—ORDER—MARCH. The word MARCH will in each case be omitted when on the move.

On the command OPEN—ORDER—MARCH, the rear rank will step back two paces and will be dressed. On the command CLOSE—ORDER—MARCH the rear rank will step forward two paces.

Ranks will be opened before the advance in review order commences and closed before any movement is

made after the salute.

On the move during a slow march the rear rank will mark time two paces on the command open—order, the third pace being a full pace forward. On the command CLOSE—order the front rank will mark time two paces leading on a full pace with the third.

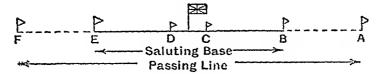
133. The inspection or review parade ground

1. Troops will be drawn up for inspection on the inspection line G—H, with their centre opposite the centre of the saluting base B—E.

The length of the inspection line will depend on the number of troops on parade and the formation in which they are to be inspected. Its distance from the passing line will depend on the greatest frontage occupied by any unit when marching past, plus the depth occupied by the band or massed bands while playing the troops past.

When larger bodies than a brigade are being reviewed

this distance may require increasing to ensure that, when troops are drawn up in line for inspection and commanders are in position at their correct distances in front of the inspecting line, the commander of the parade is at a suitable distance from the passing line in proportion to the dimensions of the parade.



(Not drawn to scale)

P	Inspection Line															P			
		-	~~ ~~	-	_		-	-		-	_		-	-	-	_	-	_	
G																			H

- 2. The length of the saluting base will not be less than 120 yards or greater than 260, the distance being dependent on local conditions. The march past commences at B and ends at E. The reviewing officer will be behind the centre of the saluting base. Ten yards on each side of him, along the saluting base, are two points "C" and "D," at which the salute will commence and finish respectively.
- 3. The portion of the passing line outside the saluting base, A-B, should be of sufficient length to enable units to obtain their direction before reaching the saluting

base. Units will move up to point "B" in close formation. From that point, units will adopt the formation laid down for them in the orders for the review or inspection.

The portion "E-F" should be of sufficient length:-

i. To enable all units taking part in the parade to form up in close column clear of the saluting base after the march past, or

ii. If the parade is not required to return in close column, to enable the rear of each unit to clear the saluting base before its commander gives the necessary orders for closing and moving off to the flank.

Similarly, the portion "E—F" enables the unit to maintain direction until its rear has cleared the saluting base, when unit commanders give the necessary orders for clearing the passing line if not required to march past in close column.

- 4. As a rule the passing line will be the same length as the inspection line.
- 5. All the points "A" to "H" will be marked by flags or markers.

THE COMPANY

134. Sizing and telling off a company

1. Sizing.

Tallest on the Right, Shortest on the Left, in Single Rank—Size.

The whole will break off and arrange themselves in single rank according to their size, the tallest on the right and the shortest on the left, carrying their rifles at the short trail, and will take up their dressing by the right.

Number.

From right to left of the whole company.

Slope—Arms. Odd Numbers One Pace Forward. Even Numbers One Pace Step Back—March.

Number One Stand Fast. Ranks, Right and Left—Turn.

The odd numbers, with the exception of No. 1, will turn to the right, the even numbers to the left.

Form Company. Quick-March.

The whole will step off, the even numbers wheeling round to the right and following the left-hand man of the odd numbers. No. 3 will form up two paces in rear of No. 1; No. 5 on the left of No. 1; No. 7 in rear of No. 5; No. 9 on the left of No. 5, and so on. As the men arrive in their places they will turn to the left, order arms, and take up their dressing.

If space is limited a company may be sized in two

ranks, tallest on the flanks, shortest in the centre.

2. Telling off.

When the company has been sized it will be numbered from right to left and told off into platoons, platoons being numbered from 1 to 4 within each company. When the number of files is not divisible by four, the outer platoons should be the stronger. A company will be told off into platoons by calling out the numbers of the left-hand men: e.g. No. 15. No. 15 of the front rank will then prove by extending his left forearm horizontally, elbow close to the side; No. 15, left of No. 1 platoon. No. 15 will then drop his arm to the side. No. 29 left of No. 2 platoon, etc.

135. A company in line saluting *

Fix—Bayonets. Slope—Arms. General Salute. Present—Arms.

On the command Present—Arms, all officers will salute as laid down in Sec. 93, 5, iii. The supernumerary rank and the guides present arms with the men.

Slope-Arms. Order-Arms. Stand at-Ease.

The officers will bring their swords to the recover and carry as laid down in Sec. 93, 5, iii.

136. A company marching past

For this practice the parade ground will be marked on

the principles as laid down in Sec. 133.

The company will be formed up in line, arms at the order, on the inspection line with its centre opposite the point at which the reviewing or inspecting officer will post himself.

The posts of officers are given in Sec. 132, 2.

Slope—Arms. Form Fours—Right. By the Left, Quick—March. Left—Wheel.

The company will step off, and, when a convenient distance along the inspection line, opposite B, will change direction to the left.

^{*} In this and the following sections dealing with ceremonial, including guard duties, the commands to Slope Arms and Fix Bayonets will not apply to men of Rifle regiments, who will remain at the Order when halted, will Present Arms from the Order without Fixing Bayonets, and will march past at the Trail. English Light Infantry regiments march past at the trail.

Company-Halt. Left-Turn. Right-Dress.

When the right of the company arrives on the passing line, the commander will order HALT, LEFT—TURN; the company having turned to its front, the right-hand man of the front rank will immediately align himself on the right guide and on the command RIGHT—DRESS, the right guide will dress the company and give the command Eyes—Front.

By the Right. Quick-March. Eyes-Right.

The commander, posted as in line, i.e. six paces in front of the centre of the company, will then give the command by the right, Quick—March. As he reaches point "C" he will give no. ..., EYES—RIGHT, upon which all, except the right guide, will turn their heads and eyes well to the right, as the left foot comes to the ground, looking the reviewing officer in the face as they pass him, and the officers will salute as laid down in Sec. 186, 4, i.

Eyes-Front.

When the rear of the company reaches point "D" the commander will give No. ..., EYES—FRONT, upon which all will turn their heads and eyes to the front, as the left foot comes to the ground, and the officers will bring their swords to the recover and carry, as laid down in Sec. 186, 4, i.

The company, if required to resume its original position on the inspection line, will be moved there after it has cleared point "E" in any convenient formation.

Reviews

137. The colours

1. On all ceremonial parades the following rules as to the carrying of colours will be observed. When at the halt, colours will never be sloped: they will be carried at the carry or order, according as the troops are at the slope or the order; but during an inspection, when the men are at the order, colours will be at the carry. (See Sec. 141.)

When on the move colours will always be carried at the slope, except when marching on to or off the parade ground, when on the saluting base, when taking post and returning and advancing in review order, and when marching in slow time down the ranks whilst trooping the colour. At these times they will be at the carry.

At the carry the colour pike will be carried perpendicularly in the belt, which will be worn over the left shoulder; the corner of the colour will be held in the right hand, which will also grasp the pike level with the forehead.

When at the order the colours will be placed per-

pendicularly on the ground at the right side.

When the unit has been ordered to Stand at Ease the colour party will act as laid down in Sec. 25. The officers carrying the colours standing at ease with the remainder but keeping the colours perpendicularly at the right side (i.e. at the order) and the left hand at the left side.

When the unit has been ordered to Stand Easy the colour party will act as laid down in Sec. 26, the officers

still holding the colours at the order.

- 2. The colours will be let fly:
 - i. As the caution is given for a Royal or general salute, and in marching past between points "C" and "D."
 - ii. The colour will be lowered (the head of the colour pike to rest on the ground) to those entitled to the compliment, as the men present arms.
- 3. When colours are lowered in wet or muddy weather, while the end of the pike rests upon the ground, the colours will be held in the hand in order to prevent them from becoming soiled.

REVIEW OF A BATTALION

138. Formation

The battalion will be drawn up in line as in Plate XXVI; bayonets will be fixed and arms sloped as in Sec. 135.

When the colonel of the regiment * is present he will be ten paces in front of the officer commanding the battalion. Should the colonel-in-chief also be present, he will be ten paces in front of the former.

139. Receiving the reviewing officer

General Salute. Present-Arms.

When the reviewing officer comes to a halt in front of the centre of the battalion, he will be received with a

^{*} In the case of the Foot Guards, for colonel of the regiment read lieutenant-colonel, and for colonel-in-chief read colonel.

salute, the men presenting arms, the band playing the first part of a slow march, and the drums beating. All officers will salute with the battalion commander (see Sec. 186, 2).

Slope—Arms. Order—Arms. Stand at—Ease.

140. Receiving the Sovereign or a Royal Personage

Royal Salute. Present-Arms.

As in preceding section, but the band will play the National Anthem or the first six bars of it (see King's Regulations).

Slope-Arms. Order-Arms. Stand at-Ease.

141. Inspection in line

The reviewing officer, accompanied by the battalion commander, who will ride on the further side from the troops, will then pass down the line from right to left, returning along the rear, the men standing at the order.

Company commanders will call their units to attention as soon as the reviewing or inspecting officer reaches the unit on their right (or left) and will order Stand at—Ease when he has passed the unit on their left (or right) respectively.

The band will play a march until he returns to the

right of the line.

The reviewing officer will then give orders for the march past.

142. Inspection in close column

When a battalion is to be inspected in close column of companies, as in Plate XXVII, the following will be the procedure:—

Officers and Colours will take Post in Review Order. Take—Post. Quick—March.

On the battalion commander's word Take, Colours will be brought to the carry. On the command Post, the officers of Nos. 1 and 3 companies, and the officers carrying the Colours, will turn to the right and the officers of Nos. 2 and 4 companies will turn to the left. On the command *Quick—March*, the officers will place themselves five paces in front of the front rank of the leading company, colours in the centre; colours, and officers of Nos. 1 and 3 companies, moving out by the right, officers of Nos. 2 and 4 companies by the left flank, and sizing themselves on the right and left of the colours respectively, the tallest officers on the flanks. The officers of Nos. 1 and 3 companies being on the right of the colours, the officers of Nos. 2 and 4 companies on the left. The second in command will be on the right, and the adjutant on the left of the line of officers. The line of officers will be dressed by the second in com-mand of the battalion. The commanding officer will be fifteen paces in front of the leading company.

ii. The reviewing officer will be received and saluted as laid down in Secs. 139 and 140. The reviewing officer will then carry out the inspection as described in Sec. 141.

iii. Officers and Colours will take Post in Close Column. Take—Post. Quick—March.

On the battalion commander's word Take, colours will be brought to the carry. On the command Post, officers will turn outwards from the centre, the colour party turning to the right. On the command Quick—March, the whole will move to their places. The colours will then be brought to the order.

143. A battalion marching past

- 1. The ground will be marked on the principles described in Sec. 133.
- 2. Posts of officers.—When marching past the reviewing officer by companies, the battalion commander will be fifteen paces in front of No. 2 platoon of the leading company, the senior major in front of No. 3 platoon in line with the battalion commander. If the colonel of the regiment * is present he will be twenty-five paces in front of the centre of the leading company. Should the colonel-in-chief also be present, he will be ten paces in front of the colonel. The adjutant will follow ten paces behind the centre of the rear company. Company officers as in line.

When marching past in close column of companies the battalion commander will be fifteen paces in front of the centre of the leading company. The senior major and the adjutant will be ten paces in rear of the centre platoons of the rear company, the senior major nearest the saluting base. Company commanders will take post

^{*} See Footnote, page 197.

as the directing guide of their companies, the guide making way by falling to the rear and aligning himself with the rear rank. Officers second in command of companies will be two paces in rear of the centre of their companies, and officers commanding platoons two paces in rear of the centre of their platoons. (See Sec. 145.)

3. Officers' salute.—In marching past by companies the mounted officers will salute when they arrive at point "C," company officers as in Sec. 136. Officers other than company officers recover swords at point "D." The battalion commander, after he has saluted, will move out and place himself on the right of the reviewing officer, and remain there until the battalion has passed; the senior major assuming command.

In marching past in close column no officer will salute

with the sword.

4. Warrant officers and staff serjeants.—In line and column formations and when marching past the regimental serjeant-major will be two paces in rear of the centre of the colour party.

The Director of music, or bandmaster and drummajor (carrying his staff at the *trail* as he passes the saluting point), will salute with the right hand on the

first occasion of marching past.

5. Drums and band.—For marching past the band and drums (or bugles) will move up to 50 paces in advance of the leading company, both formed in two or more ranks. The band will commence playing as soon as the leading company advances on the saluting base. When the band arrives in front of the reviewing officer it will turn to the left, and, after clearing the front, change direction

to the right, and halt and turn to the right opposite to the reviewing officer, continuing to play until the rear of the battalion has passed. The director of music or bandmaster will face the reviewing officer.

144. Marching past by companies

Slope—Arms. On the Right Form Close Column of Companies. Remainder Form Fours—Right. Quick—March.

Move to the Right in Fours. Form Fours—Right. Number One will Direct. Quick—March.

Change Direction Left. Left—Wheel. For—ward. By the Left.

On the command Left—Wheel, which will be given when the battalion reaches a convenient distance along the inspection line opposite "B," a left wheel will be made, the battalion moving forward on the command FOR—WARD as soon as the change is completed.

Halt. Left-Turn. Battalion Right-Dress.

On the command HALT, which will be given when the battalion reaches the passing line, the right guides will turn to the right and be covered by the adjutant, from a point outside "A" on the passing line, who will give the command Steady. On the word Steady, the right guides will turn about, the command LEFT—TURN will be given and the right-hand man of the front rank of each company will immediately correct his dressing by the right guide. On the command RIGHT—DRESS the right guides will dress their companies and give the command Eyes—Front.

March Past by Companies by the Right.

Company commanders will turn to the left and take up their position six paces in front of the centre of their

companies.

The commander of No. 1 will give the command No. 1 By the Right. Quick—March, the remaining companies following in succession at forty paces distance, or as ordered, and acting as in Sec. 136.

The battalion, if required to resume its original position in the inspection line, will be moved there in the most convenient formation and by the shortest way,

as soon as it has cleared the saluting base.

145. Marching past in close column of companies after the march past by companies

At the Halt. Form Close-Column.

If the battalion be required to march past in close column the leading company will be halted when it has moved to thirty-eight paces beyond point "E." Close column will be formed by order of the second in command, who will superintend the covering.

Order-Arms. About-Turn.

Officers, second in command of companies and platoon commanders, will place themselves two paces in rear of their companies and platoons; platoon serjeants, etc., will take post in rear of their platoons, moving by the outer flanks. The guides and blank files will step forward and align themselves with the front rank.

Left-Dress.

On the command Left—Dress the left guides will dress their companies and give the command Eyes—Front.

On the word front company commanders will take up the position of the left guide of their companies, and the guide will take up his position behind the company commander in line with the rear rank. (See Sec. 143, 2.)

Slope-Arms.

Advance in Close Column by the Left. Quick—March. Eyes—Left.

The battalion commander will give the command Eyes—Left when he arrives at point "D."

Eyes-Front.

The battalion commander will give the command EYES—FRONT when the rear company has passed point "C."

i. Left guides will not look to the left.

ii. The battalion, if required to resume its original position on the inspection line, will be moved there in the most convenient formation, and by the shortest way, as soon as it has cleared the saluting base. The second in command, company commanders, adjutant and platoon commanders will resume their respective posts in close column, by the outer flanks, on the command Change—Ranks.

146. Marching past in column of route

1. The battalion commander will march past fifteen paces in front of the leading company. Company commanders and company serjeant-majors will march at the head of their companies, the officers second in command and company quarter-master-serjeants in rear; platoon commanders will march in front and platoon serjeants in rear of their respective platoons. The necessary intervals will be made on the march for this purpose. In no case will more than four individuals march abreast.

2. The battalion commander only will salute with the sword, all other officers' swords remaining at the carry. Company commanders will give the command Eyes—Right (or Left) at point "C" and Eyes—Front when the rear of the company has passed point "D."

147. A battalion advancing in review order

Advance in Review Order. By the Centre. Quick —March.

The battalion having been formed into line at open order with bayonets fixed and arms sloped, will advance by the centre, the band and drums playing, till within thirty paces of the reviewing officer, when it will be halted and ordered to salute in the same manner as when receiving him; after which it will be directed to order arms, and will wait for orders.

CHAPTER XII

DRILL—BRIGADE AND DIVISION

148. Definitions

1. Brigade close column.—A brigade with its battalions formed up on parallel and successive alignments in close column of companies, with any named distance between battalions.

For distances between companies in close column at ceremonial drill. see Sec. 132, 2.

2. Line of close columns.—A line of battalions in close column of companies, with any named interval between battalions.

149. General rules

1. The commander of a parade will give the executive words of command for all drill movements intended to be simultaneous (such as handling of arms), except when the size or formation of the parade does not admit of his making himself heard by all concerned.

In this latter case his orders will be passed by unit commanders, who will give the cautions and executive

words of command to their own units

In order that units may work as simultaneously as possible the following procedure will be adopted:—

i. The parade commander gives a prearranged signal or has a "G" sounded on the bugle.

ii. The parade commander gives the cautionary words of command

- iii. Unit commanders repeat the cautionary words of command.
- iv. The parade commander gives the prearranged signal or has a "G" sounded.
- v. Unit commanders give the executive words of command.

When the progress of an order is interrupted, battalion commanders will conform, as quickly as possible, to the movement they see in execution.

2. When formed up for inspection and in all formations in moving to and from the passing line, intervals and distance of 40 paces will be preserved between battalions.

When marching past, the distances to be preserved

between battalions will be as follows:--

When colonel-in-chief.*

colonel of the regiment are on parade—95 paces. and commanding officer

When colonel-in-chief

or colonel of the regiment are on parade—85 paces. and commanding officer

When commanding officer only is on parade—75 paces.

- 3. A battalion will always be named to direct, the remaining battalions preserving their intervals from that battalion.
- 4. In all interior movements of a brigade, battalions will move to their places by the shortest route, when possible, by the diagonal march.

^{*} In the case of the Foot Guards, for colonel-in-chief read colonel, and for colonel of the regiment read lieutenant-colonel

5. Staff officers and officers holding personal appointments do not draw swords. They will salute with the right hand as laid down in Sec. 187, 4.

150. A brigade close column wheeling into line of close columns and vice versa

A brigade close column can be wheeled into line of close columns, and *vice versa*, by the battalions wheeling as for a battalion wheeling in close column (*see* Sec. 118, 1).

The above movements may be performed either at the halt or on the move.

151. A brigade close column deploying into line of close columns and vice versa

The battalion which is the point of formation stands fast. The remaining battalions will be moved by their commanders by the shortest line to the spot where their inner flank will rest, this spot being marked by the adjutant.

If the deployment is in an oblique direction, the battalion of formation will be formed on the required alignment by its commander, in accordance with the instructions of the brigadier. The deployment will then be carried out as always described.

out as already described.

Brigade close column will be formed from line of close columns in a similar manner.

In forming brigade close column on a central battalion, the battalions on the right and left will pass into brigade close column left arm to left arm.

152. Marching in line of battalions in close column

When a brigade marches in a line of battalions, a battalion of direction will be named. The remaining battalions will march by their inner flanks, the adjutants notifying to the commanding officers whether the interval is being correctly kept or not. Signals should be agreed on for this purpose; the commanding officer should watch for them, and direct the movement of the battalion accordingly.

153. Deployments

Lines of battalions in close column, at any interval, will deploy into line, each battalion in succession following the procedure for close column, and commencing its deployment on reaching a point, 40 paces, or as ordered, from the mounted officer on the outer flank of the battalion next to it in line.

If a brigade in brigade close column is to deploy into line, the leading battalion will deploy at once; the remaining battalions will move by the shortest lines to the points where their inner flanks are to rest in the line, and will then deploy in the usual manner.

154. Marching in line

When a brigade is required to march in line, each battalion will march by its centre. The adjutant of each battalion, except the battalion directing, will ride on the inner flank to ensure that the correct interval is maintained.

155. A brigade in line advancing in line of close columns

Line of close columns will be formed from line as for close column for a battalion.

REVIEW OF A BRIGADE *

156. Formation

- 1. The brigade may be formed with battalions in line at any ordered interval, and proceed in the same manner as a single battalion, or, in line of close columns at any ordered interval, with bayonets fixed, arms at the *order*.
- 2. Drums and band.—When drums and bands are massed they will each be in four ranks.
- 157. Receiving the reviewing officer in line of close columns
 Officers and Colours will take Post in Review
 Order.

Officers and Colours. Take-Post. Quick-March.

The officers and colours of each battalion will take post as directed in Sec. 142, i.

The line of officers will be dressed by the senior major of the right battalion of the brigade. The commanding officer will be 15 paces in front of the leading company.

^{*} In Secs. 156-162 the commands given by brigadiers are printed in thick type, those by battalion commanders in *italics*. When commands are given by company commanders it is so stated in the detail

When it is possible for the brigadiers to give the executive word of command for simultaneous movements, the orders by unit commanders indicated in the above noted sections will be omitted (see Sec. 149).

- i. The brigadier will place himself 40 paces in front of the centre of his brigade; the brigade staff will be ten paces in rear of the brigadier, the brigade major ten paces on the right, and the staff captain ten paces on the left.
- ii. As the reviewing officer approaches, the infantry will slope arms, and he will be saluted, the men presenting arms, the officers saluting, colours flying, and the bands playing. After the salute the infantry will be ordered to Order—Arms and Stand at—Ease; the reviewing officer will go down the line, accompanied by the brigadier on the side furthest from the troops. Battalion commanders acting as laid down for company commanders in Sec. 141.

iii. If the divisional general is the reviewing officer, his staff will follow that of the brigadier at two horselengths distance.

Officers and Colours will take Post in Glose Column.

Officers and Colours. Take—Post. Quick—March.

Officers and colours will take post as directed in Sec. 142, iii.

158. Inspection of a brigade in line

When troops are drawn up in line for review by an officer superior to the brigadier after the salute has been given, the brigadier accompanied by his staff, will post himself on that flank of his command to which the reviewing officer repairs; he will receive him and accompany him to the limit of his command, riding on the side furthest from the troops; the brigade staff, while passing down the line, will precede the brigadier by two horse-lengths.

159. A brigade marching past

- 1. The parade ground will be marked as described in Sec. 133, and the brigade will march past as the officer commanding may direct.
- 2. Brigadiers, staff, etc.—When a brigade marches past the reviewing officer superior to the brigadier, the latter officer (accompanied by one of his staff officers) will fall out after saluting, and will place himself on the right of the reviewing officer. The remainder of the staff will fall out after saluting and form up on the right of the massed bands. They will then be in a position to observe and be available in case of necessity.

Brigadiers salute as directed in Sec. 186, 4.

The brigadier will be 20 paces in front of the mounted officers of the leading battalion, or in line of close columns in front of the centre of the brigade, preceded at a distance of ten paces by his staff, who will be in line, 10 paces apart, the brigade major next the saluting base.

3. Drums and bands, etc.—Before marching past, the massed drums and bands will move to the head of the

brigade.

When marching past by companies, the massed drums and bands preceding the brigade staff will, on arrival in front of the reviewing officer, form opposite to him, and play till the rear of the brigade has passed. They must be moved off at such a distance in front of the brigade staff as will allow of their clearing the front when opposite the reviewing officer, without checking the mounted officers following them.

In order to ensure units marching past to the correct

tune, the bands will cease playing for any unit immediately its rear has passed point "D."

4. When marching past in brigade close column, the massed drums and bands will advance on the outer flank of the brigade close column, parallel with the leading company, halting opposite the reviewing officer; they will play the brigade close column past, and move on again opposite the centre of the rear battalion.

160. A brigade marching past by companies from line ofclose columns

March Past.

Slope-Arms. Form Fours-Right.

When this movement is completed the colonel commandant will give a signal for battalions to move.

Number One will Direct. Quick—March. Change Direction Left. Left—Wheel. Double—March. Forward. Quick—March.

As each battalion reaches a convenient distance along the inspection line, it will make a left wheel at the double. Each battalion will move forward on the command FOR—WARD as soon as its change of direction is completed and will break into quick time on the command QUICK—MARCH as soon as that pace will not check the battalion in rear.

i. When the leading battalion reaches the saluting base, it will be halted, turned to the left and dressed by the right as in Sec. 144. The remaining battalions will form brigade close column in rear of the leading battalion, moving by the shortest lines.

ii. Each battalion will then march past as directed in Sec. 144.

iii. If the brigade is then to take up its original position on the inspection line after the march past by companies, each battalion will, on its commander's orders, close to close column on the leading company, Form Fours—Left and clear the passing line at the double, then wheel to the right; after which the battalion will be moved to its original position by the simplest method. The movement to the flank, after clearing the saluting base, will not be made until the rear of the battalion has passed point "F," except in the case of the rear battalion which need only clear point "E."

. iv. If, however, the brigade is to return in brigade close column the leading company of the leading battalion will be halted on the passing line at a sufficient distance beyond the saluting base to enable the whole brigade to close up on it in brigade close column, clear of the saluting base.

Close column will be formed, arms ordered, battalions turned about and ranks dressed as in Sec. 145.

161. A brigade marching past in brigade close column March—Past.

Advance in close column by the left. Quick-March.

Each battalion will march past as directed for a battalion in close column in Sec. 145.

The brigadier will salute as directed in Sec. 186, 4. Staff officers will salute as directed in Sec. 149, 5.

As the rear of each battalion passes point "A," the battalion will Form Fours—Right and double till it

has cleared the front of the battalion following. It will then wheel at the point "H" and resume its original position on the inspection line; officers and colours taking post in review order.

On ceremonial parades where more than one unit takes part the regulation length of pace and time of marching as laid down in Sec. 29 will be adhered to.

162. A brigade advancing in review order

If required to advance in review order by the reviewing officer, battalions may be formed in line of close columns at any interval, arms at the slope, and the officers and colours in front, as described in Sec. 157.

The line of close columns will then advance, the bands and drums playing, and when at a convenient distance from the reviewing officer it will be halted and ordered to salute, after which it will be directed to order arms, and will wait for orders.

REVIEW OF A DIVISION 163. General rules

- 1. Formation.—A division may be formed up for review as its commander or the inspecting officer may direct and will proceed as described in Secs. 156 et seq.
- 2. Position of the general, the staff, etc.—The divisional commander will be in front of the centre of his division, 30 paces in front of the line of brigade, etc., commanders; the commanders of infantry brigades, the commander of the divisional artillery, and the commander of the divisional engineers will be in line, 40 paces in front of the general line. Should two or more companies of the

R.A.S.C. or R.A.M.C. be attached to the division the position of the commanders will also be as described for commanders of infantry brigades. The divisional staff will be drawn up in three lines, ten paces in rear of the general officer commanding the division, distances and intervals ten paces, thus:—

G.O.C.

A.D.C.

OFFICERS

OFFICERS

ADMINISTRATIVE STAFF

GENERAL STAFF

- 3. When the reviewing officer moves to the right of the line, the divisional general, accompanied by his staff, will act as in Sec. 158, brigadiers will remain in position in front of their brigades.
- 4 The bands of the division should be massed in rear of the centre of the division, or as the G.O.C. may direct, to play a Royal or other salute, resuming when necessary their position in rear of their respective brigades as soon as the Royal Personage or reviewing officer moves to the right of the line.
- · 5. The order of march of the staff, when passing down the line will be as follows, the distance and intervals being ten paces:—

A.D.C.

OFFICERS

OFFICERS

ADMINISTRATIVE STAFF

GENERAL STAFF

G.O.C.

164. A division marching past

1. A division will march past as the divisional commander may direct, and on the principles laid down for a brigade.

2. Generals, brigadiers, etc.—When a division marches past, the commander of the division only will move to the saluting point, accompanied by his senior staff officer.

The divisional staff will act as in Sec. 159.2. Staffs of lower formations will take up their original positions on the inspection line.

3. Position of staff.—The general and staff will march past 30 paces in front of the commander (or staff) of the leading unit in the following order, distances and intervals ten paces:—

A.D.C.

OFFICERS

OFFICERS

GENERAL STAFF

ADMINISTRATIVE STAFF

G.O.C.

No officers other than the above will join the divisional staff.

Commanders only will draw swords and salute as in Sec. 186, 4.

Staff officers and officers holding personal appointments salute as directed in Sec. 149, 5.

- 4. Distances will be as follows, or as the divisional commander may direct:—When marching past by companies 80 paces will be preserved between arms and brigades.
- 5. The bands of the leading brigade will commence playing as the brigade moves off, those of succeeding brigades as soon as the band of the brigade in front of them ceases to play. (See Sec. 159, 3.)
- 6. When no mounted band is available to play past the divisional staff and divisional troops suitable arrange-

ments must be made to ensure that a band is in position to play these troops past.

165. Review of any larger body of troops than a division

- 1. Formation.—The troops will be formed up for review as the G.O.C.-in-C. may direct.
- 2. Position of generals, brigadiers, and staffs.—Brigadiers, etc., with their respective staffs, will be posted as in Sec. 158; divisional commanders with their staffs, will take post as laid down in Sec. 163, 2.

The G.O.C.-in-C. will be in front of the centre of the line, 50 paces from the divisional commanders; the staff will be drawn up in three lines, ten paces in rear of the G.O.C.-in-C. at intervals of ten paces, ten paces being preserved between lines, thus:—

G.O.C.-in-c.
C.O.S.G.S.
O.i/C ADMN,
A.Q.M.G.
D.A.Q.M.G.
A.D.C.
G.S.O.2

No other officers will join the staff of the G.O.C.-in-C.; officers of the services other than those specified above, and officers attached to the staff will form up behind the saluting flag, or at any other convenient point.

- 3. Bands will be massed by divisions or brigades as the G.O.C.-in-C. may direct, and will resume their positions, if necessary, as soon as the Royal Personage, or reviewing officer, moves to the right of the line.
- 4. When the reviewing officer moves to the right of the line the G.O.C.-in-C. accompanied by his staff, will act as in Sec. 163, 3; divisional commanders will accompany

the reviewing officer during the inspection of their divisions; brigadiers will remain in position in front of their commands.

5. Order of march when passing down the line.—The order of march when passing down the line will be as follows, distances and intervals as in para. 2 above :-

A.M.S.

G.S.O.3 G.S.O.2 A.D.C. A.D.C. A.A.G. D.A.Q.M.G. A.Q.M.G. o. i/c admn. G.o.c.-in-c. C.O.S.G.S.

In order to accommodate the divisional staff when passing down the line, it may be found convenient for brigadiers to post themselves in the centre of and in line with their staff (see Sec. 157. i).

166. A larger body of troops than a division marching past

- 1. The troops will march past on the principles laid down for the division, and in such order as the general officer commanding may direct. Distances, 120 paces between divisions.
- 2. The G.O.C.-in-C. and his staff will march past at the head of the troops, 30 paces in front of the commander (staff or bands) of the leading unit in the following order, distances and intervals ten paces :-

A.M.S.

G.S.O.2 G.s.o.3A,D,C. A.D.C. D.A.Q.M.G. A.A.G. A.Q.M.G.

o. i/c ADMN. C.O.S.G.S.

G.O.C.-in-C.

3. The G.O.C.-in-C. will move out to the saluting point accompanied by two of his staff officers. The remainder will act as in Sec. 164, 2. Divisional or brigade commanders will not fall out unless ordered.

167. Royal Review-Order of march

- 1. The following will be the order of march at a Royal Review:
 - i. A Staff Officer.

(Interval of 50 yards.)

ii. The Sovereign.

Royal Standard Bearer.

The G.O.C. (in attendance).

iii. Princes of the Blood.

iv. Equerries in Waiting to the Sovereign.

v. Gold Stick in Waiting, Master of the Horse (if

present).

vi. Chief of the Imperial General Staff, Adjutant-General, Quarter-Master-General, Master General of the Ordnance.

vii. Full Colonels of regiments on parade, if

present.

viii. Aide-de-Camp General to the Sovereign.

ix. Crown Equerry, Silver Stick in Waiting.

x. Foreign General Officers and Military Attachés of Foreign Powers.

xi. Equerries and Attendants upon Foreign Princes.

xii. Aides-de-Camp to The Sovereign.

xiii. Equerries in Waiting to Princes of the Blood.

xiv. Aides-de-Camp to Princes of the Blood.

xv. General officers and colonels in successive order according to rank and seniority.

xvi. Staff officers to general officers present.

xvii. Indian orderly officers, to The Sovereign (if present).

xviii. Silverstick Adjutant, Regimental Adjutants of Foot Guards (if present).

xix. Royal grooms.

(Interval of 50 yards.)

xx. Detachment of cavalry.

Note.—On all occasions when the King is to be present at a review, the proposals for the order of march of the Royal procession are invariably to be submitted for His Majesty's pleasure.

2. Officers on the staff or in attendance upon His Majesty or of Royal or other persons who are received with a Royal salute in accordance with King's Regulations, do not salute when the National Anthem is played for the Royal salute.

168. Parade to celebrate the birthday of His Majesty the King, when His Majesty is not present

When a parade is held to commemorate His Majesty's birthday the following procedure will be adopted:—

- i. The Governor or other personage holding precedence of the officer commanding the parade will be received with the honours laid down in King's Regulations.
- ii. The troops will march past and reform line.
- iii. The Governor or other personage holding precedence of the officer commanding the parade,

will, unless he is a general or other military officer on the active list, then leave the saluting point. He will move to a suitable position to the flank or rear facing the Royal Standard when it is hoisted.

If the salute has been taken by a general or other military officer on the active list, he will move to a position 30 paces in front of the saluting point and will assume command of the parade. When the officer commanding the parade has taken the salute he will take post with his staff as laid down for the review of the unit or formation.

The Royal Standard, if available, will be hoisted in replacement of the flag flown during the march past.

*iv. The troops will advance in review order.

v. A Royal Salute will be given, the National Anthem will be played, and colours will be lowered.

vi. Three cheers will be given for the King (see Sec. 183), at the conclusion of which the Royal Standard will be hauled down.

vii. The Governor will leave the parade with the

appropriate honours.

^{*} If desired, a feu-de-joie may be fired, as laid down in Sec. 183, in place of the Advance in Review Order.

CHAPTER XIII

GUARDS, GUARDS OF HONOUR, AND LINING STREETS

169. General rules

1. Turning out.—When guards turn out they will move at the double and fall in with sloped arms, rifle regiments at the order, in open order. The senior N.C.O. will fall in on the right of the guard, being covered in the rear rank by the next senior N.C.O., or, if the guard is in single rank, the next senior N.C.O. will fall in on the immediate left of the senior N.C.O. The bugler two paces on the right flank of the senior N.C.O.

When the guard is commanded by an officer he will be

three paces in front of the centre of the guard.

2. Turning in.—Arms will be sloped. (Rifle regiments will shoulder arms.) The commander of the guard will give the command Dis—miss.

It is unnecessary to close ranks before dismissing.

3. If a guard mounts with a colour it will be told off in two divisions and the posts of officers will be as laid down for a Guard of Honour in Sec. 175.

The officer carrying the colour, when present, will march in the centre of the guard.

4. Guards, including reliefs, rounds and patrols, will march with sloped arms and bayonets fixed, those belonging to rifle regiments with trailed arms. In wet weather arms will be carried at the secure.

5. Guards, rounds, reliefs, and other troops on the march meeting Their Majesties the King or Queen, when accompanied by an escort or driving to or from an official ceremony or on any official or state occasion, will halt, turn in the required direction, and present arms. On all other occasions, and to other persons entitled to a salute, they will pass on with sloped arms (Rifle regiments at the trail) paying the compliment "Eyes—Right" (or Left).

They will never halt and present arms to Their

Majesties when driving in motor cars.

6. Guards will not turn out after retreat or before reveille, except at tattoo, on the approach of an armed party, in cases of an alarm, or to receive grand or visiting rounds, nor will they during this period pay any compliments, except to grand rounds, to whom they will present arms.

7. Sentries will not present arms to any armed party (except grand rowneds) after dark. As long as sentries can discern an officier, they will halt and turn to their front on his appropriate, and pay the correct compliments.

8. All guards wivill turn out at the commencement of Reveille, Retreat and Tattoo sounding; the commanders will then inspect theu.

9. For compliment its paid by sentries see King's Regulations.

170. Relieving, posting, or dismissing a guard

1. When the ground ad mits, a new guard will advance in line towards the front of the old guard, and will be drawn up, when possible, 1 5 paces in front, or when not

possible, six paces from the left of the old guard facing in the same direction.

- 2. As soon as this is completed, the old guard will present arms, and the new guard will return the salute. Commanders of guards will, if officers, salute with the sword; if N.C.Os., present arms at the same time as the men.
- 3. Both guards will in like successive manner slope arms, order arms, and stand at ease.
- 4. The guard will then be told off and the first relief sent out. When the first relief of the new guard is sent out, a corporal belonging to the old guard will accompany it to bring in the relieved sentries. If the relief moves in line, he will be on the left flank, if in file (or as in file) he will be at the head of the front rank of files (or rank). As soon as all the sentries are relieved, the two corporals will change places and the corporal of the old guard will assume command. While the relief is marching round, the commander will take over the property in charge of the guard according to the list on the inventory board, at the same time checking the list in the old guard report.
- 5. When the reliefs have returned, and all the men of the old guard have fallen in, both guards will be called to attention and ordered to slope arms.
- 6. The old guard will then move off, in line if possible, otherwise in fours or file, the new guard presenting arms; the commander of the old guard giving "Eyes—Right (or Left)."
- 7. When the old guard is clear of the ground, the new guard will slope arms, and if not already there, will move

on to the same alignment occupied by the old guard. Arms will then be ordered and the commander of the guard will read and explain the orders of the guard to his men; these orders will also be read and explained to the men forming the first relief when they come off sentry. The men of the guard will then be dismissed to the guard room.

- 8. If it is necessary to pay compliments during guard mounting, words of command will be given to both guards by the senior officer or N.C.O. on parade.
- 9. The old guard will be marched to the regimental parade ground and after inspection dismissed.

171. Procedure for guards (and piquets) turning out for inspection by an officer

- 1. On the command Guard turn out the guards (and piquets) will double out of the guard room and fall in, normally in single rank with sloped (or shouldered) arms (piquets at Attention), guards on the right, piquets on the left; N.C.Os. in charge of guards and piquets on the right of the guards and piquets respectively. The senior N.C.O. on the extreme right. The bugler two paces on the right flank of the senior N.C.O.
- 2. The guards (and piquets) having fallen in as above, the senior N.C.O. will salute and report "all correct" or otherwise to the inspecting officer.
- 3. The inspecting officer will inspect the guards, piquets, guard room, cells, etc., accompanied by the senior N.C.O. who will take one pace forward, turn to his left and then accompany the orderly officer.

When the inspection is completed the senior N.C.O.

will resume his original position.

Having received instructions from the orderly officer to TURN IN the guards (and piquet) the senior N.C.O. will act as laid down in Sec. 169, 2. He will then turn towards the officer and salute. Having completed his salute he will accompany the orderly officer on his inspection of the sentries.

4. When a guard is turned out for inspection by a station or brigade commander, the guard will fall in as in Sec. 169, I, but on the approach of the officer, the commander of the guard will order Guard. Present—Arms, when the guard, including the N.C.O. in charge, will present arms. This will be followed, after a suitable pause, by Guard. Slope—Arms.

The N.C.O. in charge will remain on the right of the guard during the inspection by the station or brigade

commander.

On receiving instructions to turn in the guard the procedure will be as in Sec. 169, 2.

172. Relieving and posting sentries, and marching reliefs 1. Relieving and posting sentries.

Relief-Halt.

On the approach of the relief, the sentry, with his rifle at the *slope*, will place himself in front of the sentry box. The corporal of the relief will halt the relief at about two paces from the sentry.

The new sentry will then move out from the relief and fall in on the left of the old sentry, facing in the same direction, the old sentry will then give over his orders, the

corporal seeing that they are correctly given and understood.

Pass.

The old sentry will move to his place in the relief, and the new sentry will close two paces to his right.

Relief. Quick-March.

The relief will be marched off.

- 2. When a sentry who is to be posted on a new post has reached the post assigned to him, he will be ordered to halt and face in the required direction. The corporal will then read and explain the orders to him; the object for which he is posted, the front of his post, and the extent of his beat.
- 3. Sentries when moving off on their beat will turn to the right and left correctly and will move in quick time at the Slope, rifle regiments at the Trail (or Support). On arrival at the end of their beat they will halt and turn about by making two distinct turns outwards to the right or left, as the case may be. When halted they will face their front and stand properly at ease. They will not halt on their beat except in front of the sentry box, unless to pay a compliment and when challenging.

Sentries must not quit their post or converse with anyone except in the execution of their duty. They will not stand in their sentry boxes in good, or even in

moderate, weather.

They will always be alert to pay compliments.

4. Marching reliefs.—Reliefs of fewer than four men will be formed in single rank, when of four men, or upwards, they will be formed into two ranks. (In

streets, or narrow places, reliefs should always be marched in single rank.) When marching in line, the corporal will be two paces in rear of the centre; when in file (or as in file) he will be on the right of the rear file (or man).

173. Sentries challenging

- 1. A sentry will challenge a person or party approaching his post, when it is necessary for his own safety, or when he is doubtful or suspicious as to whether the person or party approaching is authorized to pass. Challenging is also necessary in special cases, such as that of a sentry posted on a fortress or prison, or when a password has to be delivered.
- 2. When challenging on the part of a sentry is necessary, it will be carried out as follows:
 - i. When a person or party approaches the post, the sentry will, as soon as the person or party is within speaking distance, call out, Halt; and when the person or party has halted, Advance one,* at the same time coming to On-Guard; if, and when, the sentry is satisfied as to the identity of the person or party he will say: Pass, Friend—All's well; remaining On-Guard till the person or party has passed.
 - ii. If in answer to the challenge the sentry receives the reply Grand (or Visiting) Rounds, he will call out: Stand, Grand (or Visiting) Rounds

^{*} Advance one means that one person only is to advaidentification.

—Advance one,* the sentry remaining On-Guard until he has identified the person approaching or until he has received the password. When satisfied the sentry will say: Pass, Grand (or Visiting) Rounds—All's well; presenting arms as they pass in the case of grand rounds, sloping arms as they pass in the case of visiting rounds.

Where challenging is unnecessary, grand or visiting rounds will inform the sentry as to their identity on approaching his post, the sentry presenting arms in the case of grand rounds and remaining at the slope in the case

of visiting rounds.

3. If the sentry is on or near the guard-room door, he will proceed as in Sec. 174.

174. Guards turning out at night

- 1. Where the sentry is not directed to challenge, grand or visiting rounds will inform the sentry as to their identity on approaching his post, the sentry will then call: Guard—Turn out. The guard will fall in with bayonets fixed and arms sloped, and the commander will call out: Advance, Grand (or Visiting) Rounds—All's well; to grand rounds he will present; to visiting rounds he will remain at the slope.
- 2. Where the sentry challenges and there is no password to be delivered, the same procedure as above will

^{*} Advance one means that one person only is to advance for identification.

be observed, the sentry turning out the guard on receiving the reply Grand (or Visiting) Rounds to his challenge.

3. If there is a password to be given, a corporal or serjeant with a blank file of the guard will double out and when about ten paces from the rounds will order the file to halt; bring them to the On-Guard, and will then give the challenge: Who comes there. The reply will again be, Grand (or Visiting) Rounds; the N.C.O. calling: Stand, Grand (or Visiting) Rounds—Advance one. Rounds will then in a low voice give the password, which the N.C.O. alone will carry, in double time, for verification to the commander of the guard. If correct the commander of the guard will call out: Advance, Grand (or Visiting) Rounds—All's well. The file will then double back to the guard, and rounds will advance to the guard, which will present arms to grand rounds.

175. Guards of Honour

1. Guards of Honour, unless otherwise ordered, consist of I major or captain, I lieutenant, I 2nd lieutenant with the colour, 2 company serjeant-majors or colour-serjeants, 2 serjeants and 100 rank and file. They are accompanied by the band and drums (and pipers, if any) of the battalion. The guard is formed into two divisions, each of 25 files, and each division is subdivided into two sections.

A Guard of Honour will be sized and equalized as laid down for a company (Sec. 134). Where possible it will be formed up facing the direction from which the Personage on whom it is mounted will approach. The band

and drums will be in rear of the centre of the guard, if space permits, otherwise they will be on the flank.

- 2. The posts of the officers are as follows:
 - i. In line.—The commander three paces in front of the second file from the right, the lieutenant three paces in front of the second file from the left, the 2nd lieutenant (with the colour) three paces in front of the centre.

ii. In column of divisions.—The commander six paces in front of the first division; the lieutenant three paces in front of the 2nd division; the 2nd lieutenant (with the colour) three

paces in front of the 1st division.

iii. In column of sections.—The commander three paces in front of the 1st section, the lieutenant three paces in front of the 4th section, the 2nd lieutenant (with the colour) between the 2nd and 3rd sections.

- iv. In column of fours.—The commander three paces in front of the leading four, the lieutenant on the proper front of and three paces from the centre of the 2nd division, the 2nd lieutenant (with the colour) between the two divisions.
- 3. If a Guard of Honour is ordered to march past it will do so in column of divisions, if space permits, otherwise it will march past in column of fours. Words of command will be given by the commander.

In all interior movements, words of command to the 1st division will be given by the senior company serjeantmajor or colour-serjeant, to the 2nd division by the lieutenant, and to sections by the section commanders.

4. After paying the compliment to the Personage on whom it is mounted the guard will slope arms and order arms, the colour remaining at the "Carry."

When the guard is inspected it will stand at the order and the commander will invariably accompany the

When the guard is inspected it will stand at the order and the commander will invariably accompany the Personage on whom it is mounted, walking next to him, on the further side from the rank being inspected, round the ranks.

5. Guards of Honour of 2 officers and 50 rank and file will be formed into two divisions but will not be subdivided into sections.

The posts of the commander and the officer carrying the colour will be as detailed above.

176. Infantry lining the streets at Royal processions, etc.

- 1. The battalion commander and his adjutant will be on the flank of the unit which the procession approaches first, and the senior major on the other flank.
- '2. Officers and the colours will be on the off side of the road, looking in the direction in which the procession is moving. Company commanders will be on the flank of their companies which the procession approaches first, one pace from the ranks towards the centre of the road. Ranks will usually be one pace from the kerbstone. When a procession is to return, company commanders will take post on the other flank of their commands as soon as it has passed the first time, all other officers and colours will cross the road so as to leave the carriage way clear. Serjeants, who will fix bayonets and present arms with the men, will be in the ranks.

3. Bands and drums must not be placed at points where the traffic is left open by the police. They will be placed opposite to the colour party when circum-stances admit, otherwise they should be conveniently placed where a side street opens into the route of the procession. The leading rank must be in line with the other troops lining the route.

Markers must be sent forward by units before the arrival of troops, to show the extent occupied by each company after the extension is completed.

When the troops arrive, each company is to be marched in close order to its place and each company commander will then extend his company on the ground allotted to it.

Allowance must be made in calculating the extensions of companies for the presence of all serjeants in the ranks, for the spaces where cavalry is posted, as no infantry will stand in front of the cavalry, and also for large curves in the route which make a considerable difference.

4. The company commander on the flank which the procession first approaches receives orders from the battalion commander as to when the compliment is to be paid. Compliments are paid on the executive word of. company commanders in succession as the procession approaches their flank, or of junior commanders if the extension is wide and the men have difficulty in hearing.

Commands for compliments to be paid should be given-when the coach or carriage of the Personage to be saluted is 20 paces from the nearest flank of the unit paying the

compliment.

CHAPTER XIV

TROOPING AND PRESENTATION OF COLOURS, FEU-DE-JOIE, SWORD EXERCISES, AND FUNERALS

TROOPING THE COLOUR

177. General rules

- 1. At the hour appointed for the ceremony, points will be placed for marching past, and the guards of the necessary number and strength, furnished by companies, will be formed on the parade ground, column by the left, with unfixed bayonets facing right, so that on receiving the command, At the Halt, Left—Form, the guards will directly face the saluting base and be at a suitable-distance from it.
- 2. The senior warrant officer or N.C.O. with each guard will take command of it, being posted on the right of the front rank. Warrant officers and N.C.Os. will fix bayonets, present, etc., with the men. Markers giving points will do so as laid down in Sec. 132, 4.
- 3. The men detailed for keeping the ground will slope and present arms with the line on all occasions acting on the word of command of the battalion commander. When the troops are marching past they will present arms to the colour as it passes by word of command of their own commanders. At all other times the men will order arms and stand at ease, except when required to move for the purpose of keeping people back, when they will do so with sloped arms.

178. Forming into line to the left

The adjutant will order:—

Guards—Attention. Slope—Arms. At the Halt on Markers, Left—Form. Quick—March. Open Order—March. Guards—Right Dress.

The guards will be formed into line facing the saluting base. The markers, who will act as in Sec. 132, 4, will be covered by the regimental serjeant-major. When the guards are all dressed, the regimental serjeant-major will give the command *Steady*, upon which the markers will double into their positions in the supernumerary rank. The regimental serjeant-major will take up his position in the supernumerary rank in rear of the left guide of No. 2 guard.

179. Position of colour, officers, band, and drums

1. The colour will be placed at a distance of two guards in front of the left of the line, facing right, in charge of a serjeant and a double sentry. The serjeant in charge holds his rifle throughout. All their movements must correspond, the right sentry, who will be the front rank man of the file, giving the time; they must turn outwards together when at three paces from the colour, and inwards when ten paces from it, always turning towards the front; these sentries will order arms, stand at ease, come to attention, and slope with the men in line, except as directed in Sec. 180. The men of the right file of the first guard will be mounted as sentries on the colour, the serjeant and sentries resuming their places with the right guard, after receiving the colour, as described in Sec. 180.

- 2. The band will be formed in the front of the right of the line, at right angles to it, facing inwards opposite the colour; the drums will be in front of the left of the line, the rearmost rank being ten paces in front of the colour, facing the band.
- 3. There should be a major or captain, lieutenant, and a 2nd lieutenant to carry the colour with the right guard, which will form the escort to receive the colour. There will also be a supernumerary serjeant with this guard, who, with the serjeant detailed in para. I above, will form the colour party during the march past. When there are not sufficient officers the major or captain and 2nd lieutenant for the colour only will be with the right guard; and the lieutenant commanding the second guard will take command of the escort when it goes for the colour, moving in front of the centre of the first guard. The change of positions being effected on the drummer's call.
 - 4. The position of company officers will be as follows:
 - i. When the troops are at open order, and when on the saluting base in marching past in slow time, the captain will be three paces in front of the second file from the right, the lieutenant three paces in front of the second file from the left, and the 2nd lieutenant three paces in front of the centre of the guard.
 - ii At other times, as in line or column, except that the captain will be at six paces in front of the centre of his guard, and the subalterns in line with the supernumerary rank in rear of the centre of the right and left half guard.

For the position of the 2nd lieutenant in marching past, see Sec. 181.

- iii. The 2nd lieutenant will carry the colour as directed in Sec. 137.
- iv. If only one officer is present with the guard, he will be three paces in front of the centre of his guard when at open order, and six paces in front of the centre of guard when at close order.

180. Trooping the colour

1. The adjutant will order :-

Guards, Open Order—March. Rear Rank, Right
—Dress.

On the command March, the rear and supernumerary ranks will step back two paces—the rear rank of each guard will be dressed by the right marker of the guard, who will give the command, Rear Rank, Eyes—Front, and fall in.

Warrant and Non-Commissioned Officers Commanding Guards to the Front.

All warrant officers and serjeants commanding guards will take two paces forward and recover arms, the right-hand man of the rear rank of each guard filling up the intervals left by his commander.

Quick-March. Inwards-Turn.

The drums will play a quick march. The serjeants will step off, and when near the saluting base on which the guards are to march past, they will receive the command Inwards—Turn, on which the serjeant in the

centre will halt and turn about, and then bring the rifle to the slope.

The remaining serjeants will turn inwards, and will halt and turn towards the line as they close on the centre serjeant, sloping arms after halting and turning. The drums will cease playing before the command Inwards—Turn is given.

Order-Arms. Stand at-Ease.

The guards and serjeants will order arms and stand at ease.

The drums will beat the assembly, marching across the parade; they will march through the intervals of the band, and will counter-march and halt in rear of it.

As the assembly commences, the officers, with carried swords, will fall in, facing the line three paces in front of the serjeants, and three paces from each other, taking up their dressing from the centre.

Guards-Attention. Fix-Bayonets. Slope-Arms.

Warrant officers and N.C.Os. will fix bayonets.

The guards having sloped arms, the adjutant will hand the detail of the duties over to the battalion commander, draw his sword, and take his post on the right of the line of officers.

2. The battalion commander will draw his sword and give the following words of command *:—

Officers, Warrant and Non-commissioned Officers. Outwards—Turn.

^{*} From this paragraph to the end of Sec. 183 the words of command given by the battalion commander are printed in thick type, and, when referred to in the detail in SMALL CAPITALS; those given by subordinate commanders in *italics*.

- For the position of the 2nd lieutenant in marching past, see Sec. 181.
- iii. The 2nd lieutenant will carry the colour as directed in Sec. 137.
- iv. If only one officer is present with the guard, he will be three paces in front of the centre of his guard when at open order, and six paces in front of the centre of guard when at close order.

180. Trooping the colour

1. The adjutant will order :-

Guards, Open Order—March. Rear Rank, Right
—Dress.

On the command March, the rear and supernumerary ranks will step back two paces—the rear rank of each guard will be dressed by the right marker of the guard, who will give the command, Rear Rank, Eyes—Front, and fall in.

Warrant and Non-Commissioned Officers Commanding Guards to the Front.

All warrant officers and serjeants commanding guards will take two paces forward and recover arms, the right-hand man of the rear rank of each guard filling up the intervals left by his commander.

Ouick-March. Inwards-Turn.

The drums will play a quick march. The serjeants will step off, and when near the saluting base on which the guards are to march past, they will receive the command Inwards—Turn, on which the serjeant in the

centre will halt and turn about, and then bring the rifle

to the slope.

The remaining serjeants will turn inwards, and will halt and turn towards the line as they close on the centre serjeant, sloping arms after halting and turning. The drums will cease playing before the command Inwards—Turn is given.

Order-Arms. Stand at-Ease.

The guards and serjeants will order arms and stand at ease.

The drums will beat the assembly, marching across the parade; they will march through the intervals of the band, and will counter-march and halt in rear of it.

As the assembly commences, the officers, with carried swords, will fall in, facing the line three paces in front of the serjeants, and three paces from each other, taking up their dressing from the centre.

Guards—Attention. Fix—Bayonets. Slope—Arms. Warrant officers and N.C.Os, will fix bayonets.

The guards having sloped arms, the adjutant will hand the detail of the duties over to the battalion commander, draw his sword, and take his post on the right of the line of officers.

2. The battalion commander will draw his sword and give the following words of command *:—

Officers, Warrant and Non-commissioned Officers. Outwards—Turn.

^{*} From this paragraph to the end of Sec. 183 the words of command given by the battalion commander are printed in thick type, and, when referred to in the detail in SMALL CAPITALS; those given by subordinate commanders in *italics*.

The officers, warrant officers, and serjeants will turn outwards, the former recovering swords, and the latter their rifles after turning.

Take post in front of your Guards. Quick-March.

The officers, warrant officers, and serjeants will step off, halting and turning towards the line opposite their places in line; after turning towards the line, the former will carry swords and the latter slope arms.

To your Guards. Slow-March.

On the command March the officers, warrant officers. and serjeants will step off in slow time, the officers recovering swords as they take the first pace, and the warrant officers and serjeants recovering rifles as they take the first and third paces. The band will play a slow march as the officers, warrant officers, and serjeants march to the line, and cease playing as the latter arrive at their places.

When the officers arrive at three paces from the line they will mark time; the warrant officers and serjeants will mark time when on the right of their guards, the original right-hand men of the rear rank dropping back into their places. The adjutant, with carried sword, will move to his place on the left of the line, in line with

the officers, marching on their right.

Halt. About-Turn.

The officers, warrant officers, and serjeants will halt and turn about, the former carrying their swords, the latter sloping their rifles after turning.

The battalion commander will take post fifteen paces

in front of the centre of the line.

Order-Arms. Troop.

On the command TROOP the band and drums will play a slow march from the right to the left of the line, and on arriving ten paces from the colour they will countermarch, halt, and cease playing.

The band and drums will then play a quick march from left to right, and will counter-march, halt, and cease playing when in front of the right of the line. As the band and drums approach the right of the line, before counter-marching, a drummer will fall out and place himself two paces from the right of the line, in line with the front rank.

On the band ceasing to play the drummer on the right of the line will beat the drummer's call.

On the first tap of the call, the captain and lieutenant of the right guard will turn inwards, recover swords, and move across in quick time, passing right arm to right arm; the captain passing in rear of the 2nd lieutenant, will place himself three paces in front of the right file of the second guard, the lieutenant three paces in front of the 2nd lieutenant for the colour. Having halted and turned to the front, they will bring their swords to the carry. The drummer having beaten the call, will take post again with the drums in quick time. If there are only two officers with the right guard the escort will be commanded by the lieutenant from the second guard.

The band and drums will be placed in front of the right guard, and the regimental serjeant-major will fall in four paces in rear of the centre file of the escort, and will draw his sword. The supernumerary serjeant will

place himself in rear of the second file from the left of the second guard.

Escort for the Colour, Slope—Arms. Remainder, Stand at—Ease.

The sentries on the colour remain at attention with ordered arms.

The lieutenant of the escort will then give the following commands:—

Escort for the colour, Close Order—March.

The escort will take close order by the rear rank taking two paces to its front, the officers remaining in front, and the markers coming up on the right and left of the rear rank.

By the Left. Quick—March. Left—Form. For—ward by the Centre.

The escort, preceded by the band and drums playing the "British Grenadiers," will move out the distance of a guard and a half from the line, then form to the left and march by the centre straight towards the colour.

Escort for the Colour—Halt. Open Order—March. Right—Dress.

The escort will be halted attwenty paces from the colour. The band and drums, when near the colour, will wheel to the left, clear the escort, cease playing, halt, and turn about.

On the command *Right—Dress* the men will get their own dressing, the guides standing fast.

Guards-Attention. Slope-Arms.

The sentries will slope arms also.

The regimental serjeant-major will move in quick

time to the front by the left flank, receive the colour, and return towards the escort; the 2nd lieutenant for the colour will at the same time move out, place himself four paces in front of the lieutenant passing by his right, and having saluted the colour as the regimental serjeant-major brings it up to him, and then having returned his sword, he will receive the colour from the regimental serjeant-major, place it in his belt, and turn about.

The commander of the escort will then give the

following words of command:-

Escort to the Colour. Present-Arms.

The escort will then be ordered to present arms, the regimental serjeant-major saluting, the serjeants in the front rank making a half-turn outwards, those in the rear rank making a turn and a half-turn outwards and then porting arms (see Sec. 98), and the sentries presenting arms. The band and drums will play "God Save the King," if the King's Colour is being trooped; or the first eight bars of a slow march if the regimental colour is being trooped.

Slope-Arms.

The escort will slope arms; the 2nd lieutenant with the colour will resume his post in rear of the lieutenant, passing by his left; the regimental serjeant-major, still keeping his sword drawn, will resume his post, passing by the left flank of the escort; the serjeant, passing by the right flank, will place himself in rear of the 3rd file from the right; the right guide and marker will close two paces to the right; the sentries will resume their places in quick time as the right file of the escort; the band and drums will turn about.

Escort to the Colour. Left—Form. Slow—March. For—ward by the Centre.

As soon as the regimental serjeant-major, serjeant, and sentries above mentioned are in their places, the lieutenant will form the escort to the left, and march off in slow time, preceded by the band playing the "Grenadiers' March." The battalion commander will place himself sufficiently far in front of the line to allow the band and drums to pass in rear of him.

When the band and drums approach the left of the line they will wheel to the left, and will move in front of

the line of officers and halt.

As the escort reaches the rear of the drums, the band and drums will receive the command, Slow—March, from the serjeant-drummer.

Right-Turn, Left-Wheel. Left-Wheel.

The lieutenant, when at four paces from the line of commanders of guards, will give the command Right—Turn, Left—IVheel, and on the leading file of the escort arriving opposite the left-hand man of the front rank of the line, will again give the command Left—IVheel.

Guards, Present-Arms.

The band will cease playing as soon as the lieutenant has given the second command Wheel, and the battalion commander will then order the guards to Present—Arms. After the guards have presented, the band and drums will recommence playing.

The lieutenant of the escort will move three paces in front of the line of officers, abreast of the 2nd file from the right of the escort; the 2nd lieutenant carrying the colour, will follow him abreast the centre of the escort.

The front rank of the escort will file between the ranks of the guards, the rear rank between the rear and

supernumerary ranks.

. When the head of the escort arrives at the right of the remainder of the line, the captain will bring his sword to the carry, will take the place of the lieutenant, and will move on with the escort to his original post, the lieutenant will mark time when at his original post, and the 2nd lieutenant with the colour will move on, passing him by the proper front.

Escort to the Colour—Halt. Left—Turn. Left—Dress. Eyes—Front.

The escort will be halted as soon as it has cleared the remainder of the line and the lieutenant having given the command *Eyes—Front*, will take post three paces in front of the second file from the left of the escort.

The captain will then give the commands Escort to the colour, Present—Arms. The band and drums will cease playing before the escort is halted, and when near their original position will wheel to the left about on the command of the serjeant-drummer.

Guards, Slope-Arms. Close Order-March.

On the command close order the officers, with sword still at the carry, will turn to the left, and on the command MARCH, they will move to their places at close order. The guards will take close order, the markers of the escort taking post in the supernumerary rank, and the supernumerary serjeant rejoining the escort. The 2nd lieutenant with the colour will take post four paces in rear of the fourth file from the left of the right guard (the centre file of that guard making way for him),

the regimental serjeant-major placing himself two paces in rear of him, and one serjeant on each side.

Guards will Retire. About-Turn.

The whole will turn about except the left guides who will turn to their left, officers and supernumerary ranks retaining their places.

At the Halt. Right—Form. Quick—March. Guards will Advance. About—Turn. Left— Dress.

The guards will be formed back into column. The adjutant will cover the guides from the rear of the column and give the command Steady.

The band and drums will take up a position in front

of the saluting point.

181. Marching past

March Past in Slow and Ouick Time. By the Left. Slow-March.

The column will step off, officers, warrant officers, The column will step off, officers, warrant officers, and N.C.Os. in the supernumerary rank will be in the same alignment, each guard forming to the left when opposite point "B," and again when at forming distance from it. The band will commence to play directly the word For—ward is given, after No. 1 guard has formed round the first point and will stop playing when the last guard is given the command For—ward after forming round at point "E." The battalion commander will place himself at the saluting point and return his sword. The colour party, during the formation at point "E," will change flank. The officers fincluding the 2nd lieutenant with the colour) of each (including the 2nd lieutenant with the colour) of each

guard, during the formation at point "B" will place themselves three paces in front of the front rank, the captain in front of the second file from the right, the lieutenant in front of the second file from the left. and the 2nd lieutenant in front of the centre, subaltern and the 2nd lieutenant in front of the centre, subaltern officers moving out by the left flank. The guides will take post on the flanks of the front rank. When his guard has formed round at point "B" each commander of a guard will give the commands By the Right. For—ward. Open—Order. The rear and supernumerary ranks will mark time two paces and then move on, markers moving up on the flanks of the rear rank. The guards will then march past the saluting point as directed in Sec. 136.

When at twenty paces beyond the saluting point each captain will give the command *Close—Order*, on which the officers and front rank will mark time two paces, and then move on, markers taking post in the supernumerary rank.

On reaching point "E" each captain will give the command Left—Form, For—ward—by the Left, the officers resuming their places in column, the right guides remaining on the right of the front rank.

Guards, Quick-March.

As soon as the last guard has formed at point "E," the band will cease playing and the troops will break into quick time by order of the commanding officer.

The guards will then march past in quick time, the same procedure being followed as for the march past in

slow time except that :--

- i. The ranks will be at close order.
- ii. Officers with the exception of the 2nd lieutenant

with the colour will not change their positions on reaching point "B."

iii. The colour party during the formation at point "B," and again at point "E," will change flank.

iv. The markers will be in the supernumerary rank.

v. When marching past in quick time, the officers will not salute, but each captain will give the command Eyes—Right and Eyes—Front, at the same points as in slow time.

Guards, Left-Form. For-ward. Halt.

As the left of each guard reaches the point where it rested in line, each captain will give the command Mark—Time, and when the last guard is in position the commanding officer will form the guards into line and halt them.

Should any one be entitled to the *Present*, the battalion commander will open the ranks, and order a Royal or General Salute. The band having been moved to the right of the line.

Order-Arms.

If trooping the, colour is to be followed by guard mounting the battalion commander will then give the commands STAND AT—EASE, OFFICERS FOR DUTY FALL—OUT, STAND—EASY. Officers for duty will fall out, salute the commanding officer, and return their swords; the regiment al serjeant-major will also return his sword.

The 2nd lieutenant any one else's charge. will not give the colour into

Guard mounting will thi en be performed in accordance with local instructions issue ed for the same.

When guards are not being furnished, arms having been ordered, the commanding officer will give the command Unfix—Bayonets and will then march the troops back to barracks.

PRESENTATION OF COLOURS

182. General rules

1. The battalion, except the colour party, band, and

drums, will be drawn up in line.

The place for the colour party will be preserved by three N.C.Os. The old colours with the serjeant and two coverers (see Sec. 132, 3) of the colour party and double sentries, will be in front of the left of the line, at right angles to it, and the band and drums placed as for trooping.

The lieutenants of the colour party will be with the escort (the right company), which in this case will be

commanded by a captain.

The new colours, cased, will be in rear of the centre, in charge of two senior company serjeant-majors or

colour-serjeants.

The Chaplain-General and the chaplains taking part in the parade ceremony will take post behind the saluting flag a few paces on the right of the staff attending the personage presenting the colours. The Chaplain-General will be in line with the staff, the other chaplains behind him in line, in order of seniority from right to left.

2. The old colours will be trooped. On reaching the right of the line, the old colours will take post in front of the escort, which will then advance about ten paces in slow time, form to the left, and in that order proceed

to the left of the line, the band will follow, playing "Auld Lang Syne." The escort will return to its place by the rear; the old colours, cased, being left in rear of the battalion in charge of two company serjeant-majors or colour-serieants.

The battalion will then form three sides of a square.

The drums will be piled in the centre; the new colours will be brought up from the rear by the colour-serjeants in charge, and placed against the pile of drums, one on each side, the King's colour on the right. The senior major and senior lieutenant will then take charge of the King's colour; the next senior officer and next senior lieutenant of the regimental colour. These officers will uncase the colours and replace them against the drums.

3. When the colours to be consecrated have been 3. When the colours to be consecrated have been uncased as above, and the order Stand—Easy has been given, the personage presenting the colours will move forward to a position in rear of the piled drums, facing the parade. At the same time the Chaplain-General will move to a position in front of the drums facing the personage making the presentation, and will remain in this position during the consecration service. The other chaplains will accompany the Chaplain-General and will take post behind him in line as before. The consecration service will then proceed service will then proceed.

On completion of the consecration service the Chaplain-General and the other chaplains will move to their left front and take post on the right of and facing the drums, where they will remain during the presentation and until the general salute has been given.

After the consecration, the senior major will hand the

King's colour to the person presenting the colours, from

whom the senior lieutenant will receive it, sinking on the right knee the regimental colour will in like manner be handed by the next senior officer and received back by the second senior lieutenant; both lieutenants will then rise.

- 4. Any address intended to be made will now follow. Line will then be reformed, the colours, unfurled and turned towards the centre of the line, will be given a general salute. The colour party will then march in slow time to its place in line, the band playing "God Save the King."
- 5. Whilst the battalion is reforming for the final part of the ceremony, the personage presenting the colours will return to the saluting base, and the chaplains will take up their original position behind the saluting flag where they will remain until the staff has been dismissed.
- 6. The battalion will march past, the old colours following in rear of the column.
- 7. The battalion will form up again in line and advance in review order.

FIRING A FEU-DE-JOIE

183. General rules

The troops will be drawn up in line, at open order, rifles at the order, bayonets, except those of the colour party, will not be fixed. The commander of the parade and his staff will be posted in front of the line, at such distance as he may decide, and turned towards it if desired; all other mounted officers will be fifteen paces in rear of the line, passing by the flanks of their battalions.

Three rounds of blank cartridge will be fired. If artillery are present and are ordered to fire twenty-one guns, seven guns will be fired before each round. Battalion commanders will give the command LOAD immediately the artillery commences firing, and the command PRESENT directly the seventh gun has fired, the commanding officer of the right battalion giving the command COMMENCE immediately after the command PRESENT.

Feu-de-Joie.

Company commanders, officers second-in-command of companies, and officers commanding platoons will step forward three paces, and the rear rank and supernumeraries will step back two paces. The colours will be brought to the *carry* and the colour party will advance six paces by command of the senior officer.

The colours will not be lowered during the firing of a

feu-de-joie.

Load.

The company serjeant-majors and company quarter-master-serjeants and men will load, by drawing back the bolt, laying a cartridge in front, and forcing the bolt home. The muzzles of the rifles to be inclined upwards, so as to clear the heads of the men in front. Supernumerary rank will remain at the order.

Present.

Rifles will be brought to the position for firing, but at an angle of 135 degrees. Heads will be kept perfectly still and no attempt made to aim.

Commence.

The right-hand man of the front rank will commence

the fire, which will run down the front and up the rear

as quickly as possible.

When the right-hand man of the rear rank has fired the band will play the first part of "God Save the King," the men remaining at the present, officers remaining at the carry (see note to Sec. 187, 2, i), while the National Anthem is being played. On the last note of the band, battalion commanders will give the word of command Load, when the men will come to the loading position; the artillery will fire seven guns, and the infantry proceed as above described. Two more rounds will be similarly fired. When the second round is fired the band will play the second part of "God Save the King." When the third round is fired the band will play "God Save the King."

Unload.

At the conclusion of "God Save the King," battalion commanders will give the command UNLOAD, when the men will come to the loading position and carry out the motions of unloading, remaining in the loading position, rifles at an angle of 135 degrees.

Order-Arms.

The men will come to the order, the colour party will resume its position in line and order arms by command of the senior officer, the colours being brought to the order.

The mounted officers will then move to their positions as in Secs. 132 and 157, the company officers will resume their normal positions and battalion commanders will give the following commands (on parades of large bodies working on the signal of the general of the division or brigadier as in Sec. 149, 1):—

Fix—Bayonets. Slope—Arms. Royal Salute. Present—Arms. Slope—Arms. Order—Arms. Remove Head-dresses.

Three cheers will then be given.

The head-dress will be removed by and retained in the left hand*, which will be raised to the full extent of the arm above the head as the signal for each cheer is given; rifles to be at the *order*.

Unfix-Bayonets.

Note.—If a march past has been ordered to follow the firing of the feu-de-joie, bayonets will not be unfixed.

Glose Order—March.

SWORD EXERCISES 184. Dismounted sword drill

When the sword with slings	is worn When the swo with Sam Bro men	wne equip-	
1. The posi- tion of atten- tion Attention Attention Attention Attention The sword (or employed) will be held by the side, the the scabbard rest the ground close left foot and just of the heel. The arm will be expected the hand round the bard, thumb in fingers in rear, the hand outward.	upright shoe of hand, thumb forefinger dow bard, remain in rear, back outwards. tended, he seab- if front, back of	by the left in front, on the scab- ling fingers	

^{*} In Highland and Scottish regiments, the sword or rifle will be passed to the left hand; the head-dress will then be removed by, and retained in, the right hand, which will be raised in the manner described above.

When the sword is worn When the sword is worn with Sam Browne equipwith slings ment 2. To draw Raise the seabbard until right hand Pass the smartly across the body swords the forearm is horizontal. and grasp the handle of Draw grasping the upper ring the sword. Draw out the blade until the forearm is with the thumb and Swords-One forefinger, the remaining fingers closed in the horizontal. hand, the thick part of the forearm against the side. At the same time pass the right hand smartly across the body and grasp the handle. Keeping the right forearm horizontal, turn the edge to the rear and straighten the left arm in rear of the thigh, the right arm close to the body, shoulders square to the front. Carry the shoe of the seab-Two Draw the sword slowly (Position from the seabbard, and bard slightly to the rear, of Recover) draw the sword slowly bring it smartly to the upwards to the front and Recover. bring it smartly to the Recover that is, with the blade perpendicular, edge to the left, upper part of the hilt opposite the mouth, elbow elose to the body. At the same time bring the seabbard upright by the side. Three Lower the sword to the Carry, that is, with the fore-(Position of arm horizontal, hand in front of the elbow, elhow elose to the body, blade perpendicular, edge to the Carry) front, forefinger and thumb round the resistance

piece, other fingers round the handle, hilt resting on

the upper part of the hand.

	When the sword is worn with slings	When the sword is worn with Sam Browne equip- ment
3. Slope— Swords	Relax the grasp of the last three fingers, place the little finger behind the handle and allow the back of the sword to fall lightly on the shoulder midway between the neck and point of the shoulder. (Plate XIV.)	
4. Return Swords— One	From the Carry:— Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, forearm horizontal. At the same time, with the left hand, bring the mouth of the scabbard forward about three inches, grasping the upper ring with the thumb and forefinger and turning the edge to the left rear.	From the Carry:— Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow level with the shoulder, at the same time carrying the shoe of the seabbard slightly to the rear.
	point into the scabbard a	the right wrist, drop the and resume the position at an of draw swords, shoulders the front throughout this
Two	Push the sword lightly into the scabbard, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up, and bring the sword to the position of attention.	
Three	Drop the right hand smart	ly to the side.
5. Stand-at- Ease—One	(i) With the sword in the s Keeping the legs straight,	seabbard. carry the left foot and the s to the left. So that the

	When the sword is worn with slings	When the sword is worn with Sam Browne equipment
Two	Place the palm of the left hand on the top of the hilt, the right arm hanging by the side.	Carry the hands behind the back and place the back of the right in the palm of the left, grasping it lightly with the fingers and thumb, and allow the arms to hang easily to their full extent.
.Three	Push to the front to the full extent of the arm.	_
	(ii) With the sword drawn. As with sword in scabbard, except that the palm of the left hand is placed on the mouth of the scabbard instead of on the hilt of the sword and the sword is retained at the slope.	From the Slope:— Carry the left foot about 12 inches to the left, the sword remaining at the slope. The left hand grasping the sword as in the position of attention.
6. Quiok— March	Raise the sword (or empty scabbard) smartly with the left hand at the first pace, without stooping or disturbing the position of the body. Grasp the scabbard at the point of balance and hold it at an angle of 45 degrees with the ground, fingers round the scabbard, thumb along the edge, arm fully extended.	The sword (or empty scab- bard) is kept steady by the side by the left hand.

_		When the sword is worn with slings	When the sword is worn with Sam Browne equipment
7. Halt	•••	Lower the sword, or empty scabbard, to the ground and assume the position of attention.	Assume the position of attention.

When the great coat is worn in Review Order the sword belt will be worn outside the tunic under the sash; the sword being hooked up and the hilt passed through the slit in the great coat.

185. Mounted sword drill

1. Draw swords.

Draw Swords-One.

Pass the right hand smartly across the body over the bridle arm, draw out the blade so as to rest the hilt on the bridle arm, place the sword knot on the wrist, give it two or more turns inward to secure it, and then grasp the handle with the right arm close to the body, shoulders square to the front.

Two.

With an extended arm draw the sword slowly from the scabbard and bring it smartly to the Recover.

Three. (Position of the Carry.)

Lower the sword smartly to the Carry, that is, with the guard resting on the hand, blade perpendicular, edge to the front, the first, second, and third fingers gripping

the handle under the resistance piece, the little finger behind the handle to steady it, the wrist resting on the thigh and the pommel pressed against the inside of it, upper part of the arm close to the body, and the elbow lightly touching the hip.

2. Slope swords.

Slope-Swords.

Raise the hand until the forearm is horizontal, keeping the upper arm perpendicular, hand in front of the elbow, relax the grasp of the second and third fingers, and allow the sword to fall lightly on the shoulder, midway between the neck and point of the shoulder, the guard still resting on the hand, the little finger still in rear of the hilt.

3. Sit at ease.

Sit at—Ease. (From the Slope.)

Place the hands on the front part of the saddle, with the right hand over the left, without removing the sword from the shoulder.

4. Attention.

Come smartly to the position of slope swords.

5. Return swords.

Return Swords—One. (From the Carry.)

Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, forearm horizontal. Then by a quick turn of the wrist drop the point into the scabbard and resume the position at the end of the first motion of *Draw swords*, shoulders being kept square to the front throughout this motion.

Two.

Push the sword lightly into the scabbard, release the hand from the sword knot by giving it two or more turns outwards, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up.

Three.

Drop the right hand smartly to the side.

Note.—For saluting with the sword, see Sec. 186, and for instructions in funeral exercises, see Sec. 188.

186. Saluting with the sword

1. Saluting with the sword at the halt, when dismounted.

—The sword being at the carry. (Plate XV.)

First motion.—Bring the sword to the recover. (Plate XVI.)

Second motion.—Lower the sword until the point is 12 inches from the ground and directed to the front, edge to the left, right arm straight, hand just behind the thigh, thumb flat on the handle of the sword. (Plates XVII and XVIII.)

Third motion.—Bring the sword to the recover. Fourth motion.—Bring the sword to the carry.

To salute on coming up to a superior, officers will approach the superior at the carry and halt three paces from him before saluting.

2. Saluting with the sword when on parade with troops.—
On the command Present—Arms bring the sword to the recover with the first motion of the rifle and lower the sword to the salute with the third motion of the rifle.

On the command Slope—Arms bring the sword to the recover with the first motion of the rifle, and to the carry with the second motion of the rifle.

When wearing a sword in a scabbard, officers will

salute with the hand.

- 3. Saluting with the sword at the halt, when mounted.—
 Officers salute as described in para. 1, above, except that after the recover the sword is lowered to the front to the full extent of the arm, blade three inches below the knee, edge to the left, thumb extended in the direction of the point, hand directly under the shoulder. The sword is then brought to the recover and down to the carry, that is, with the guard resting on the hand, blade perpendicular, edge to the front, the first and second fingers gripping the handle under the resistance piece, the little finger behind the handle to steady it, the wrist resting on the thigh and the pommel pressed against the inside of it, upper part of the arm close to the body, and the elbow lightly touching the hip.
- .4. Saluting with the sword when marching past.—The salute is to commence on the order Eyes—Right (see Sec. 136) or in the case of individual officers at a point "C," ten yards before arrival in front of the reviewing officer, and finish on the order Eyes—Front (see Sec. 136) or in the case of individual officers at a point "D," ten yards after passing him, the time being taken from the officer on the right.
 - i. When dismounted.

First motion.—Carry the sword direct to the right to the full extent of the arm, hand as high as the shoulder, back of the hand to the rear, blade perpendicular, edge to the right.

Second motion.—Bring the sword by a circular motion to the recover, keeping the elbow as high as the shoulder.

Third motion.—Still keeping the elbow the height of the shoulder, bring the hilt to the right shoulder, hand as high as the elbow; during this motion let the finger nails come in line with the edge of the sword.

Fourth motion.—Lower the sword to the front as in para. 1, above (Second motion).

There should be no pause between these motions; all

should be continued in one graceful movement.

When the salute has finished the sword is brought to the *rccover*, carrying it well in front, and to the *carry*, in two deliberate movements, each time as the left foot comes to the ground.

The head is turned towards the reviewing officer on the first motion of the salute and is turned to the front again

on the first motion of the recover.

The first motion of the salute will be made as the left foot comes to the ground, and the salute will be carried over four paces, the fourth motion being given as the right foot comes to the ground.

At the recover a pause of one pace is made, and on the following pace the sword is brought to the carry, i.e. as

the left foot comes to the ground.

ii. When mounted.—Mounted officers will similarly commence the salute at 10 yards from the reviewing officer, the four motions being gradually and slowly combined into one easy movement. They will lower the sword to the front to the full extent of the arm, blade

three inches below the knee, hand directly under the shoulder.

- iii. Other occasions.—On occasions other than ceremonial parades, e.g. when the battalion is marching past in column of route, or when on the line of march, officers will not draw swords, but will salute with the hand.
- 5. The salute before dismissing (at the conclusion of a parade).—On the command Fall out the officers, officers will march up to the officer commanding the parade at the carry, halt three paces from him and salute. After saluting, officers will return swords, and form up in rear of the commander until the parade is dismissed.

187. General instructions for officers

- 1. On ceremonial parades, officers other than company commanders, will draw swords after their companies have been inspected. Company commanders will draw swords together, taking the time from the second-incommand or company commander of the leading company when there is no second-in-command on parade. The commander of a parade will not draw his sword unless a senior officer be present on parade.
- 2. Dismounted officers' swords will be carried as follows:---
 - At the halt.—At the carry on all occasions when their men are at the order or with sloped arms.* (See Plate XV.)

^{*} Swords will be at the carry during the firing of a feu-de-joic.

ii. On the move.—At the slope except:—

(a) On the saluting base.

(b) When taking post, and returning, and when advancing in review order.

(c) During guard mounting and at the Trooping the Colour.

- 3. Mounted officers' swords will be carried as in para. 2, above; for the *carry* see Sec. 185, 1, sub-para. 3, and for the *slope* see para. 2 of the same section.
- 4. When marching past, in any ceremonial formation with swords not drawn, officers will salute with the hand. The salute will commence at point "C" and finish at point "D," officers in front of leading formations taking their time from the commanding officer.

FUNERALS

188. Rifle exercises

1. The following exercises are only required by the firing party and troops lining the streets at a military funeral.

The ceremonial instructions to be carried out will be as laid down in King's Regulations, 1928, paras. 934-943 and Appendix XXI.

2. To reverse arms from the present. Reverse Arms—One.

Bring the right foot smartly up to the left and force the rifle out to the full extent of both arms, the left hand still grasping the rifle in line with the backsight, the right hand at the small of the butt.

Officers with drawn swords will bring the sword to the recover.

Two.

Bring the butt of the rifle towards the body passing it inside the left arm and turning the muzzle over to the front so that the position of the rifle is reversed, *i.e.* the muzzle now pointing to the ground, guard in line with the chest, at the same time change the position of the hands, so that the left hand grasps the rifle at the small of the butt and right hand at the point of balance, the rifle still remaining at the full extent of both arms.

Officers with swords drawn will bring the sword to the

carry.

Three.

Give the rifle a cant under the left arm-pit, bringing the muzzle to the rear, sling uppermost, keeping the left elbow close to the rifle, rifle close to the body; then seize the rifle with the right hand behind the body near the band, right forearm parallel to the ground. The rifle should be at an angle of 45 degrees.

Officers with swords drawn will reverse the sword under the right arm, point downwards, edge uppermost. The hilt being grasped with the right hand, the left hand grasping the blade in rear of the body, forearm parallel with the ground. The blade of the sword to be at an angle of about 45 degrees, right elbow close to the body.

When marching in slow time arms will be carried at the reverse. When changing from quick time to slow time arms will be reversed on the command SLOW—MARCH.

3. To change arms from the reverse under the left arm and vice versa.

Change Arms-One.

Release the rifle with the right hand and, still holding

it with the left hand at the small, allow the muzzle to drop, so that the rifle is in a perpendicular position.

Officers with drawn swords will bring the sword to the

carry.

Two.

Throw the rifle to the right, releasing it with the left hand and catching it at the small with the right hand, the

left hand being cut smartly away to the side.

Officers with drawn swords will pass the sword across the body, gripping the hilt with the left hand and cutting the right hand away to the side.

Three.

Place the rifle under the right arm-pit, sling uppermost, elbow close to the rifle, at the same time seizing the rifle at the band behind the body, with the left hand, forearm parallel to the ground. The rifle to be at an angle of

45 degrees.

Officers with drawn swords will reverse the sword under the left arm-pit, point downwards, edge uppermost, the hilt being grasped with the left hand, the right hand grasping the blade in rear of the body, forearm parallel to the ground. The blade of the sword to be at an angle of about 45 degrees, left elbow close to the body.

4. To trail arms from the reverse under the left arm.

Trail Arms-One.

Quit the rifle with the left hand, and seize it again with the left hand at the point of balance—i.e. round the hand-guard.

Officers with swords drawn will carry the right hand

back and seize the blade of the sword six inches behind the hilt, back of the hand towards the ground.

Two.

Quit the rifle with the right hand, and bring the rifle to the trail at the left side, butt to the front, sling uppermost.

Officers with swords drawn will lower the sword to the right side, and bring the left hand to the side, blade parallel to the ground edge outwards.

When marching in quick time arms will be carried at the trail. When changing from slow time to quick time arms will be trailed on the command QUICK—MARCH.

5. To change arms from the trail at the left side and vice versa.

Change Arms—One.

Bending the arm from the elbow, bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the left shoulder.

Officers with swords drawn will bend the arm from the elbow and bring the sword to a perpendicular position at the right side.

Two.

Throw the rifle across the body to the right side, and seize it with the right hand, as at present held with the left.

Officers with swords drawn will carry the sword across the body and seize it with the left hand, holding it in a perpendicular position at the left side.

Three.

Bring the rifle to the trail, sling uppermost.

Officers with drawn swords will lower the sword to the trail at the left side.

To change from right to left is the converse of the above.

6. To reverse arms from the trail at the left side.

Reverse Arms-One.

Carry the rifle with the left hand to a position underneath the left arm-pit and at the same time seize the rifle with the right hand as described in the position of the Reverse Arms.

Officers with swords drawn will carry the sword up with the right hand underneath the right arm-pit, at the same time seizing the blade with the left hand in rear of the body.

Two.

Seize the small of the butt with the left hand.

Officers with drawn swords will seize the hilt of the sword with the right hand.

7. To rest on your arms reversed from the reverse at the left side.

Rest on Your Arms-Reversed.

Quitting the rifle with the right hand bring it with the left to a perpendicular position and lower it until the muzzle rests upon the toes of the left foot. Turn the head and eyes to the right and extend the right hand to the right to the full extent of the arm, palm open, back of the hand uppermost; bring the right hand slowly to the butt, make a pause of slow time, then turn the head and eyes to the front and bring the elbow close to the side. Turn the head and eyes to the left and repeat the above motions with the left hand, make a pause of

slow time, then turn the head and eyes to the front and bring the elbow to the side. Make another pause of slow time, then lower the head on the breast.

In performing the above exercise the time should be taken from the right- or left-hand man, as the case may

be, of the front rank.

Officers with swords drawn will allow the point of the sword to fall forward and downwards, and place the point on the ground between the feet, edge to the right. Extend the left arm to the left to the full extent of the arm, palm open, back of the hand uppermost. Bring the left hand slowly to the top of the hilt, and place it on the right, then bring the elbow into the side and lower the head on the breast. (This movement should be done with the men.)

· 8. The attention from rest on your arms reversed.

Attention.

Raise the head.

9. To reverse arms from rest on your arms reversed.

Reverse Arms-One.

Seize the small of the butt with the left hand.

Two.

Raise the rifle up with the left hand to a position underneath the left arm-pit, at the same time seize the rifle behind the body with the right hand as described in the position of reverse arms.

Officers with swords drawn will carry the sword up with the right hand to a position underneath the right arm-pit, at the same time seizing the blade with the left hand behind the back, left forearm parallel to the ground.

10. To present arms from rest on your arms reversed. Present Arms—One.

Raise the rifle with the right hand about six inches, at the same time seizing it with the left hand immediately in line with the magazine, back of the hand downwards and towards the body, thumb to the front.

Officers with swords drawn will cut the left arm to the

side and bring the sword to the carry.

Two.

Seize the small of the butt with thumb and forefinger of the right hand, thumb to the left, back of the hand downwards and to the front.

Officers with swords drawn will bring the sword to the recover.

Three.

Turn the rifle over by lowering the butt towards the body and come to the ϕ resent.

Officers with swords drawn will bring the sword to the

salute.

11. To fire the three volleys.

Volleys (with blank cartridges)-Load.

Bring the rifle to the loading position; draw back the bolt, lay a cartridge in front of and force the bolt home. The muzzles of the rifles to be inclined upwards so as to clear the heads of the men in front.

Present.

Rifles will be brought to the position for firing but at an angle of 135 degrees. Heads to be kept perfectly still and no attempt made to aim.

Fire.

Each man will at once press the trigger, remaining at the *present* until the command LOAD or UNLOAD is given. Two more volleys will be similarly fired.

Unload.

Bring the rifle to the loading position and carry out the motions of unloading, remaining in the loading position, rifles at an angle of 135 degrees.

INDEX

Note.—No reference to drill movements is made in this index.

Headings of sections dealing with drill will be found in the Table Contents.

Α.			
A 1 - * - * - A A * A *			PAGE
Administrative duties: training in	•••	•••	50
Annual training, general details	•••	•••	42 et seg.
Anti-gas training, recruits: detail of	• • •	•••	38
В.			
Battalion-			
—— Drill, details of			
—— Intelligence section: training of		• • •	53 et seg.
— Training, details of			
Birthday parade for H.M. The King, when	i His Ma	iesty	
present	•••	•••	221
c.			
Canc or pace stick, drill with	•••	•••	103
Cartridges, dummy: inspection of	•••		32
Ceremonial, details of	•••		186 et seg.
Collective training-			•
—— Details of : general considerations	•••	• • •	56 et seq.
Elementary, for recruit : details	•••	•••	40
—— Object of	•••		42
Colour party, position of	•••		188
Colours, trooping and presentation of	•••		235 et seq.
Company-			
— Drill, details of			148 et seq.
Training: general arrangements for			58
Company commanders—			***
— Tactical training of			47
— Training responsibilities of	•••	•••	20
Compliments on the march: paying of	•••	,	182
Co-operation, importance of in training	•••		16

	D.					
						AGE
Definitions Depot, regimental: organization	n for t	 raining	recrui	ts	1 et 29 et	
Discipline, general consideration	ıs		•••	•••	•••	11
Dismissing, details of procedure	•••	•••	•••		•••	105
Distances on the march: main	tenance	of	•••			185
Dressing, correctness of : duty	of man	.in	•••		•••	71
Drilling recruits, general instruc	ctions f	or	•••	•••	•••	70
	•••	•••	•••	•••	• • •	81
Dummy cartridges: inspection	of	•••	•••	•••	•••	32
	E.					
Educational training, recruit :	conside	rations			•••	36
Efficiency, standard of for a rec		•••	•••	•••	•••	38
Equipment for recruits: issue of		•••	•••		•••	32
Esprit de corps, general conside		•••	•••	•••	•••	12
	F.					
Feu-de-joic: firing of				,		251
Field engineering, instruction to	ho oi	***	•••	•••	•••	59
Field signals, details of			•••	•••	172 et	
Fighting patrols: conduct and			•••	•••		62
Fighting spirit, general consider			***	•••	•••	10
Funerals, rifle exercises	ations	•••	•••	•••	264 et	
a distribution of the contract	•••	•••	•••	•••	ZUT CI	seq.
Consud	G.					
Ground—	•_•					10
Use of: importance in tra	iming	•••	•••	•••	•••	16
Training in use of: consider	icration	าร	•••	•••	•••	61
Guards—						000
General rules for, etc.	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	223
Turning out at night	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	230
Guards of Honour: details of		•••	•••	•••	• • •	226
dualds of Honour; details of	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	231
	H.					
H.Q. wing training: details of						60

1					
Individual training-				F	AGE
Aim of, for the man: detail	s	•••	•••	50 et	seq.
General considerations regar		•••	•••	•••	44
Leader: general details for	•	•••		•••	45
Object of			• • •	• • •	42
Recruits at depot : syllabus	of		•••	• • •	33
Inspection of a squad: method o		•••		•••	75
Instruction(s)—					
Barrack and camp duties, re	eruit: eon	siderat	ions	•••	38
Drilling recruits: general				• • •	70
Field engineering: when to	be given	•••	•••	•••	59
General: as affecting training	ng	•••		•••	7
Indoor, use of sand models	•••	•••	•••	•••	46
Officers, general for ceremon	ial parades	•••	•••	• • •	263
Principles of : general notes		•••		16 et	scq.
Instructors, training of	• • • •	• • •	• • •	48 et	
. •					•
1.					
Leadership, general consideration	s		•••	8 et	cea
Lining streets at Royal procession		•••	•••		233
ming succes at Noyar procession	13, 010,	•••	•••	•••	200
n n	s .				
March discipline-	••				
—— Animal transport: details o	f			•••	179
General instructions, etc		•••	***	176 ct	
Recruit training, importance		•••	•••		37
Marching-	01 411111111111111111111111111111111111	•••	•••	•••	٠,
Length of pace and time					80
Position in	• •••			•••	81
Recruit, training in				•••	37
Markers, ceremonial parades: det			•••	•••	189
Marking points: ceremonial para	des	•••	•••		189
Mental training: general consider		•••	•••	•••	14
Messages, delivering of		•••		•••	143
Militia, annual training of	• •••	•••	•••	•••	43
Mobility, general considerations		•••	•••		15
Moral qualities—	• •••	•••	•••	•••	10
Considerations regarding	•••			•••	10
- Recruit : development of	• •••	•••		•••	33

275	
Index.]	
N. PAGE Night operations, training in 63 et seq.	
O. 185 Officers: position of on parade: considerations	
P. 62 et seq. Patrols, conduct and duties of: details	,) 7
R. 6 Reconnoitring patrols, conduct and duties of 6 Recruit training— — After joining battalion: details of	11 10 29

Recruits— — Equipment for: issue of — Rifles: use of by — Squad: formation of for training — Standard of efficiency for Rifle exercises for funerals Rifle, signals by: details Royal Review—Order of march	•••		PAGE 32 32 30 38 264 et seq 174 220
S.			
Saluting, general instructions Sand models, use of for indoor instruction Sanitation—	•••	•••	135 et seg. 46
Importance of during training	•••	•••	43
On the march: arrangements	***	•••	184
Training in: appreciation of methods	•••	•••	50
Schemes, preparation and execution of	•••	• • •	61
Section battle formations, details of	•••	•••	67
Section commander— — Tactical training: details of — Training responsibilities of Sontries—	•••	•••	47 21
— Challenging by: details	•••	•••	229
Relieving and posting	•••	•••	227
Saluting by: details	•••	• • •	143
Signals, field: details of	•••	•••	172 et seg.
Skill at arms, general considerations	•••	***	14
Standard of efficiency for a recruit	•••	•••	38
Supplementary Reserve, annual training of	•••	•••	43
Sword exercises	•••	• • •	254 et seq.
Syllabus of training for recruits at depot	•••	•••	32 et seq.
т.			
Tactical training of leaders, considerations	•••	•••	46 et seg
Territorial Army, annual training of	•••	***	43
Tools, use of: instruction in	•••	•••	59
Administrative duties: considerations	•••	•••	50
Aim and object of	• • •	***	7 et seq.
Annual: general considerations	•••	***	42 et seq.

Training-continued.				PAGE
Anti-gas, recruit: detail of				38
Battalion commander : responsi		ns of	•••	19
— Battalion intelligence section:				53 et seg.
		3 01	•••	ດ້າ
—— Cadre, duties of	•••	•••	•••	
—— Cadre: object of	•••	•••	•••	49
Collective: general details of	***	•••	•••	56 et seq.
Company commander, responsib	ilities	of	•••	20
Educational, recruit		• • •	•••	36
Headquarter wing: details of	•••	•••		60
Instructors: considerations	•••		•••	48 et seq.
Mental: general considerations	•••			14
Night operations: details	•••	•••	•••	63 et seq.
Orderlies: details for		•••		53
		• • • •	•••	
Patrols: conduct and duties of	•••	•••	• • •	
Physical: general considerations	· · · ·	• • •	•••	13
Physical, recruit: consideration	5	•••	***	34
Platoon commander: responsible	ilities	of	•••	20
Recruits: general arrangements	for			29 et seq.
Recruits, system of		•••		30 et seg.
Responsibility for, general cousi		ions		18 et seg.
- Section commander: responsibi	litine	of	•••	21
Tratical Inches accidention	111103			46 et seg.
Tactical, leaders: consideration		• • •	•••	
Weapon, recruit: details of	. •••	•••	•••	37
Trooping the Colours, general rules, e	tc.	•••	•••	235 et seq.
w.				
Weapon training, recruit: details of		•••	•••	37
Whistle, use of : signals			•••	174
Words of command details of			,	71 et sen

Printed under the authority of His Majesty's Stationery Office by William Clowes & Sons, Ltd., London and Beccles.

⁽²⁰⁷⁾ Wt. 25708-9187/2143. 90m. 10/32. W. C. & S., Ltd. Gp. 309. 10*-(207)

KEY TO PLATES.

Commanding Officer. Second-in-Command	Company Sorjeant- Major Company Qr.Mr Serjeant.			
Adjutant.				
Company Commander	: Dther N.C.OS			
Company Second-in- Command.	Section Commander.			
Plataon Commander	Bandmaster.			
Other Officers.	Serjeant Drummer (Bugler or Piper.)			
Regimental Serjean Major.	t-🗋 Drummer (Orderly)			
Regimental Quarter- moster Serjeant.	Other ranks.			
The figures indicating intervals and distances represent paces				

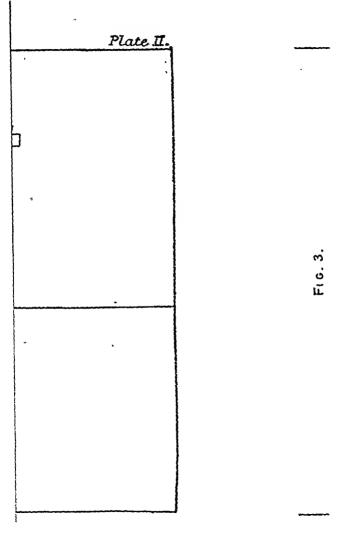


PLATE V.-THE SLOPE.



PLATE VI.
THE PRESENT.



PLATE VII.
FIXING BAYONETS (AT "TWO"), REAR RANK.



PLATE VIII. UNFIXING BAYONETS (AT "ONE").



PLATE IX. THE TRAIL.

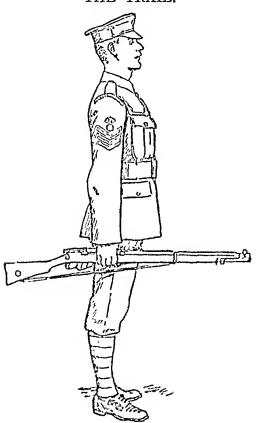


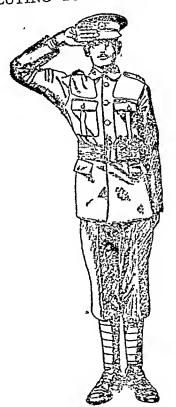
PLATE X.
THE SECURE



PLATE XI.
THE RECOVER.



PLATE XII. SALUTING TO THE FRONT.



$\label{eq:plate_xiii} \textit{PLATE XIII}.$ THE SALUTE WITH THE RIFLE AT THE SLOPE.



PLATE XIV. THE SLOPE.

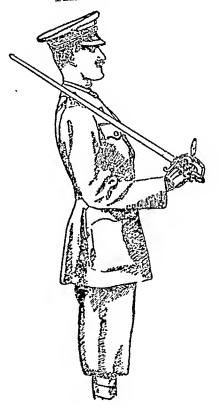


PLATE XV.

THE CARRY.



PLATE XVI.

POSITION OF RECOVER (FRONT VIEW).



PLATE XVII.

THE SALUTE—2nd MOTION (Front View).

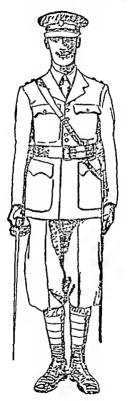


PLATE XVIII.

THE SALUTE-2ND MOTION (SIDE VIEW).

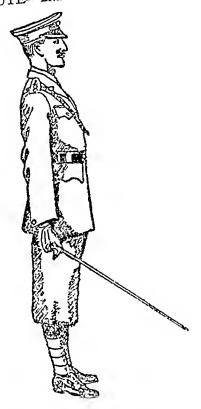
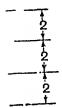


Fig. 1.

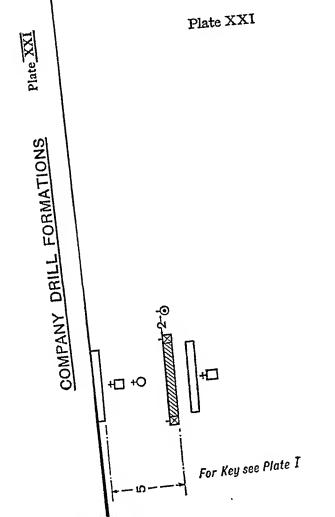
Fig.2. I

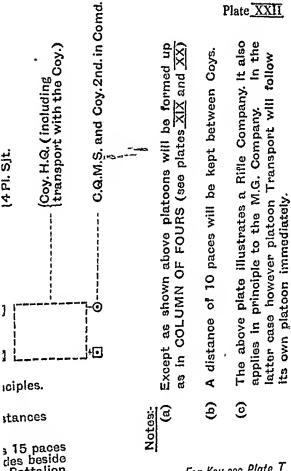
Men will fall in with their own sections. All section commanders will be in the front rank.



NOTES:-

- (a) Platoon headquarters (shown □) fall in on the right of the platoon,
 - (b) Men will fall in with their own sections, except that the section commander of the right section will fall in on the right of the platoon.
 - (c) Section corporals will fall in with their sections.



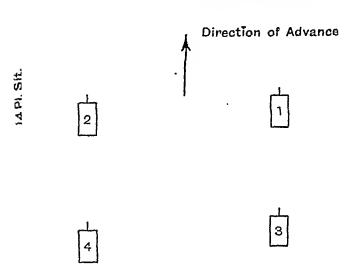


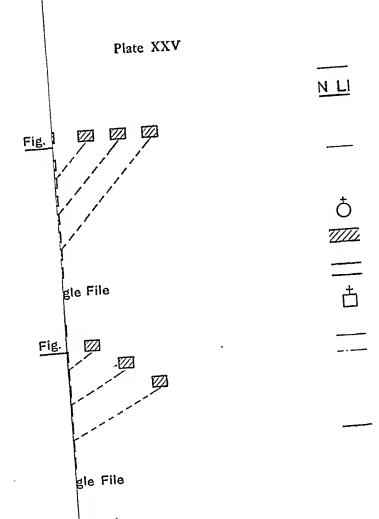
Battalion

For Key see Plate I

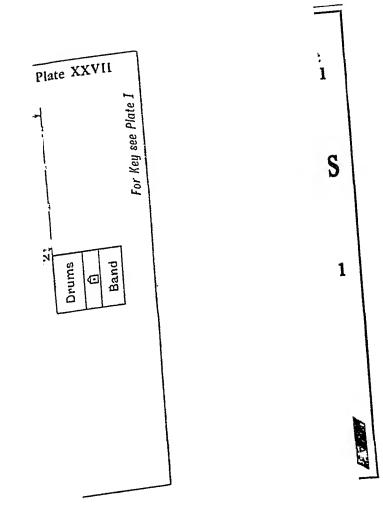
INY C FROI Plate XXIII Fig. 2_Ll anies will form up in polumn in accordance plate XXI. s of mass formation e varied to meet ular circumstances P may be desirable for Q. Wing to be formed the right of the ion, or for all transport in rear.)

FORMATION AFTER SIGNAL (SQUARE)





NE. (Peace est.)		Plate XXVI
	φ φ φ	+ 3
		† 2 † 6 • † 2
	For Vo	y see Plate I





An average issue of the Overseas Mirror (six complete daily issues of the London Daily Mirror bound in one) contains 150 pages of news, pictures and interesting articles. It is wonderful value for money. Rates are:—52 weeks Canada, 32s.; 52 weeks anywhere else in the world, 46s., post free. Order through your newsagent or direct from:—

OVERSEAS WEEKLY MIRROR Geraldine House, Fetter Lane, London, E.C.4.

3330



To BUY SELL or EXCHANGE A CAR



There are 150 new and used cars from which you can make your choice, in our showrooms. Every one is guaranteed to be in good running order.

Any make of new car can be supplied. Get your used or new car from Denman and ensure satisfaction.

DENMAN

Motor Agency

LTD.

CONSULT DENMAN

SIX MONTHS' FREE SERVICE ON ALL CARS OVER \$50 Deferred terms

ON LEAVE SCHEME

We repurchase new or used cars at any period at definite prices. We particularly recommend this scheme to those who only require the use of a car for a limited period.

Temple Bar 8135/6/7

132/3, LONG ACRE, LONDON, W.C.2



SHOOTING MEN

APPRECIATE THE DIVERSIONS ATTAINABLE THRO' THE USE OF

Parker-Hale

Arms and Accessories

Our NEW GENERAL CATALOGUE, 1932 edition, is a volume of concentrated interest to expert and novice alike. There are over 250 pages of Rifles, Guns, Revolvers, Pistols and

EVERYTHING SHOOTING

PRICE 1/-

and

POSTAGE 4d.

A. G. PARKER AND CO., LTD.,

BISLEY WORKS,

ENGLAND.

BIRMINGHAM,

BIRMINGHAM MEDAL Co. Ltd.

FREDERICK STREET, BIRMINGHAM

'Phone: Central 1921. Grams: Trophies, B'ham.



HIGH-CLASS MANUFACTURERS OF MEDALS, CHALLENGE CUPS, SHIELDS, TROPHIES, ENAMELLED BADGES, TANKARDS, SPORTS & PRESENTATION GOODS OF ALL KINDS.

"Stand at Ease" and "March at Ease"

by using



The Quality Polish

(Sold in all canteens)

Stafford Hotel

Centre Sea Front St. Leonards-on-Sea

Well appointed and most comfortable unlicensed hotel in the district, between two Piers and close to all amusements, etc. Cuisine under first-class English chef and only the best of all provisions, cooked under ideal conditions, supplied.

Terms Moderate.

Illustrated Brochure

'Phone: HASTINGS 304.

RESIDENT PROPRIETORS:
COLONEL P. W. WILLIAMS-TILL, O.B.E.
MRS. M. WILLIAMS-TILL.

(Late Manageress, HOTEL BELGRAVIA, Victoria.)

BRITISH LEGION

(Incorporated by Royal Charter.)

PATRON:

H.R.H. THE PRINCE OF WALES.

VICE-PATRON:

ADMIRAL OF THE FLEET EARL JELLICOE, G.C.B., O.M., G.C.V.O.

PRESIDENT:

MAJ.-GEN. SIR FREDERICK MAURICE, K.C.M.G., C.B.

THE NATIONAL ORGANISATION for ex-Service Men and Women of all ranks and ratings of the

NAVY, ARMY, AND AIR FORCE.

All who have served in any of the above should join their local Branch and become members of this magnificent organisation, which, while maintaining the comradeship of the trenches, stands for justice for those who fought and suffered, and for their Dependants, and for the care of the Widows and Orphans of the fallen.

EMPLOYMENT DEPARTMENT.

Employers are invited to notify their requirements to the Director, British Legion Employment Department, 26, Eccleston Square, London, S.W.1.

APPEALS DEPARTMENT.

Donations and subscriptions for the purpose of alleviating distress amongst those who have served, their Dependants, and the Widows and Orphans of the fallen, should be sent to:

THE ORGANISING SECRETARY,

EARL HAIG'S BRITISH LEGION APPEAL.

Further particulars on all Legion matters may be obtained from:
COLONEL E. C. HEATH, D.S.O., General Secretary.

Headquarters:

HAIG HOUSE, 26, ECCLESTON SQUARE, LONDON S.W.I. Telephone: VICTORIA 9620.

LEARN TO FLY WHILE ON LEAVE

AND LIVE AT THE

HANWORTH

CLUB FROM LONDON

OTHER FLYING CLUBS AT BLACKPOOL, HULL, LEEDS—BRADFORD, NOTTINGHAM, READING, AND STOKE-ON-TRENT.

A MEMBER OF ONE CLUB
IS A MEMBER OF ALL

NATIONAL FLYING SERVICES, LTD., THE LONDON AIR PARK, FELTHAM, MIDDLESEX. Telephone: FELTHAM 236.

NFS

SALISBURY

WOOLLEY & WALLIS

W. Wallis, F.A.I., R. M. Woolley, F.S.I., F.A.I., J. S. Woolley, F.S.I., F.A.I., F. Wallis, A.A.I.

Auctioneers and Surveyors Estate Agents and Valuers

HANTS. WILTS and DORSET

Head Office at: SALISBURY, and at RINGWOOD and ROMSEY

PROPRIETORS: CATERING HOUSES LTD.

PHONE 166

SPECIAL **TERMS** FOR OFFICERS ON COURSES

BEDROOMS RECENTLY RE-FURNISHED

GARAGE

ALDERSHOT

IMPERIAL HOTE CAVALRY BARRACKS

TILLEY PARAFFIN LAMPS



SUSPENSION LAMP, I.L.33

All Tilley Lamps are British made. They burn ordinary Paraflin and are therefore perfectly safe. All Officers in the Army, Territorials, Indian Army, Dominions and Crown Colonies should write for further details.

TILLEY LAMP Go. (Dept. I.T.) **ENDON, LONDON, N.W.4.

LIGHTING CAMPS, MARQUEES, etc.

300 C.P.

The Indoor Suspension Lamp is undeniably the best possible lamp for lighting Marquees and for use in Camp. Gives a magnificent light, requires little attention and is perfectly safe. Why put up with smelly, smoky wick lamps which after all give but feeble illumination when science offers you a perfect and up-to-date lamp?

The Storm Lantern is marvellously useful for all work about the Camp. It can be carried about, put down anywhere without fear of explosion or fire. Wind, rain, and weather proof. Contains enough oil for 10 hours with once filling. Costs one penny for 6 hours light.



STORM LANTERN P.L.53